An Introduction to TEI Simple

2016-07-28

Preface

This document is the formal specification for TEI Simple, an entry-level customization of the Text Encoding Initiative (TEI) Guidelines, intended to be generally useful to a large variety of encoders attempting to cope with the standardized representation in digital form of a large variety of documents.

The document is intended to be generally comprehensible and accessible, but does assume some knowledge of XML (the encoding language used by the TEI), and of the way it is used by the TEI. Further information on both these topics are available from many places, not least the TEI's own web site at http://www.tei-c.org.

The TEI Simple schema was first elaborated as a part of a project funded by the Mellon Foundation (2012-2014). The project sought to define a new 'highly-constrained and prescriptive subset 'of the Text Encoding Initiative (TEI) Guidelines suited to the representation of early modern and modern books, a formally-defined set of processing rules which permit modern web applications to easily present and analyze the encoded texts, mapping to other ontologies, and processes to describe the encoding status and richness of a TEI digital text. Its choice of elements reflected the practices followed in the encoding of large-scale literary archives, notably those produced by the Text Creation Partnership. Practice of other comparable archives such as the German Text Archive was also taken into account.

The most distinctive feature of TEI Simple is its use of the TEI processing model, which provides explicit and recommended options for the display or processing of every textual element. Programmers developing systems to handle texts encoded with TEI Simple do not have to look beyond this when building stylesheets or other components. This greatly reduces the complexity of developing applications that will work reliably and consistently for many users and across large corpora of documents.

The TEI Simple schema and the Processing Model were first defined by a working group led by Martin Mueller (Northwestern University) and Sebastian Rahtz (Oxford University). Major contributions to the project were made by Magdalena Turska (Oxford University), James Cummings (Oxford University), and Brian Pytlik Zillig. The changes to the TEI scheme needed to support the processing model were reviewed and approved by the TEI Technical Council for inclusion in release 3.0.0 of TEI P5 in February 2016. The present document was extensively revised and extended by Lou Burnard in July 2016 for submission to the TEI Council.

1 A Short Example

We begin with a short example. How should we go about transferring into a computer a passage of prose, such as the start of the last chapter of Charlotte Bronte's novel *Jane Eyre*? We might start by simply copying what we see on the printed page, typing it in such a way that what appears on the screen looks as similar as possible, for example, by retaining the original line breaks, by introducing blanks to represent the layout of the original headings, page breaks, and paragraphs, and so forth. Of course, the possibilities are limited by the nature of the computer program we use to capture the text: it may not be possible for example to reflect accurately the typographic characteristics of our source with all such software. Some characters in the printed text (such as the accented letter *a* in *faàl* or the long dash) may not be available on the keyboard; some typographic distinctions (such as that between small capitals and full capitals) may not be readily accessible. Our first attempt tries to mimic the appearance of the former, and simply ignores the latter.

```
  CHAPTER 38

READER, I married him. A quiet wedding we had: he and I, the par-
son and clerk, were alone present. When we got back from church, I
went into the kitchen of the manor-house, where Mary was cooking
the dinner, and John cleaning the knives, and I said --
'Mary, I have been married to Mr Rochester this morning.' The
housekeeper and her husband were of that decent, phlegmatic
order of people, to whom one may at any time safely communicate a
remarkable piece of news without incurring the danger of having
one's ears pierced by some shrill ejaculation and subsequently stunned
by a torrent of wordy wonderment. Mary did look up, and she did
stare at me; the ladle with which she was basting a pair of chickens
roasting at the fire, did for some three minutes hang suspended in air,
and for the same space of time John's knives also had rest from the
polishing process; but Mary, bending again over the roast, said only --
'Have you, miss? Well, for sure!'
A short time after she pursued, 'I seed you go out with the master,
but I didn't know you were gone to church to be wed'; and she
basted away. John, when I turned to him, was grinning from ear to
ear.
'I telled Mary how it would be,' he said: 'I knew what Mr Ed-
ward' (John was an old servant, and had known his master when he
was the cadet of the house, therefore he often gave him his Christian
name) -- 'I knew what Mr Edward would do; and I was certain he
would not wait long either: and he's done right, for aught I know. I
wish you joy, miss!' and he politely pulled his forelock.
'Thank you, John. Mr Rochester told me to give you and Mary
this.'
I put into his hand a five-pound note.  Without waiting to hear
more, I left the kitchen. In passing the door of that sanctum some time
after, I caught the words --
'She'll happen do better for him nor ony o' t' grand ladies.' And
again, 'If she ben't one o' th' handsomest, she's noan faa\l, and varry
good-natured; and i' his een she's fair beautiful, onybody may see
that.'
I wrote to Moor House and to Cambridge immediately, to say what
I had done: fully explaining also why I had thus acted. Diana and

474

JANE EYRE                      475

Mary approved the step unreservedly. Diana announced that she
```

```
would just give me time to get over the honeymoon, and then she
would come and see me.
'She had better not wait till then, Jane,' said Mr Rochester, when I
read her letter to him; 'if she does, she will be too late, for our honey-
moon will shine our life long: its beams will only fade over your
grave or mine.'
How St John received the news I don't know: he never answered
the letter in which I communicated it: yet six months after he wrote
to me, without, however, mentioning Mr Rochester's name or allud-
ing to my marriage. His letter was then calm, and though very serious,
kind. He has maintained a regular, though not very frequent correspond-
ence ever since: he hopes I am happy, and trusts I am not of those who
live without God in the world, and only mind earthly things.
```

This transcription suffers from a number of shortcomings:

- the page numbers and running titles are intermingled with the text in a way which makes it difficult for software to distinguish them;
- no distinction is made between single quotation marks and apostrophe, so it is difficult to be certain exactly which passages are in direct speech;
- the preservation of the copy text's hyphenation means that simple-minded search programs will not find words broken across a line;
- the accented letter in *faàl* and the long dash have been rendered by ad hoc keying conventions which follow no standard pattern and will be processed correctly only if the transcriber remembers to mention them in the documentation;
- paragraph divisions are marked only by the use of white space, and hard carriage returns have been introduced at the end of each line. Consequently, if the size of type used to display the text changes, reformatting will be problematic.

We now present the same passage, as it might be encoded in TEI Simple. As we shall see, there are many ways in which this encoding could be extended, but as a minimum, the TEI approach allows us to represent the following distinctions in a standardised way:

- Paragraph and chapter divisions are now marked explicitly by means of tags rather than implicitly by white space.
- Apostrophes are retained, but the quotation marks indicating direct speech have been removed, and direct speech is now marked explicitly by means of a tag.
- The accented letter and the long dash are accurately represented, using the appropriate Unicode character.
- Page divisions have been marked with an empty <pb> tag; the page heading and running text have been suppressed.
- The lineation of the original has also been suppressed and words broken by typographic accident at the end of a line have been re-assembled without comment.
- For convenience of proof reading, a new line has been introduced at the start of each paragraph, but the indentation is removed.

```
<pb n="474"/>
<div type="chapter" n="38">
 <p>Reader, I married him. A quiet wedding we had: he and I, the parson and clerk,
were
    alone present. When we got back from church, I went into the kitchen of the
    manor-house, where Mary was cooking the dinner, and John cleaning the knives,
and I
    said —</p>
 <p>
  <q>Mary, I have been married to Mr Rochester this morning.</q> The housekeeper
and
    her husband were of that decent, phlegmatic order of people, to whom one may at
any
    time safely communicate a remarkable piece of news without incurring the danger
of
    having one's ears pierced by some shrill ejaculation and subsequently stunned by
a
    torrent of wordy wonderment. Mary did look up, and she did stare at me; the
ladle
    with which she was basting a pair of chickens roasting at the fire, did for some
    three minutes hang suspended in air, and for the same space of time John's
knives
    also had rest from the polishing process; but Mary, bending again over the
roast,
    said only —</p>
 <p>
  <q>Have you, miss? Well, for sure!</q>
 </p>
 <p>A short time after she pursued, <q>I seed you go out with the master, but I
didn't
      know you were gone to church to be wed</q>; and she basted away. John, when I
    turned to him, was grinning from ear to ear. <q>I telled Mary how it would
be,</q>
    he said: <q>I knew what Mr Edward</q> (John was an old servant, and had known
his
    master when he was the cadet of the house, therefore he often gave him his
Christian
    name) — <q>I knew what Mr Edward would do; and I was certain he would not wait
long
      either: and he's done right, for aught I know. I wish you joy, miss!</q> and
he
    politely pulled his forelock.</p>
 <p>
  <q>Thank you, John. Mr Rochester told me to give you and Mary this.</q>
 </p>
 <p>I put into his hand a five-pound note. Without waiting to hear more, I left the
    kitchen. In passing the door of that sanctum some time after, I caught the words
    —</p>
 <p>
  <q>She'll happen do better for him nor ony o' t' grand ladies.</q> And again,
<q>If
      she ben't one o' th' handsomest, she's noan faàl, and varry good-natured; and
i'
      his een she's fair beautiful, onybody may see that.</q>
 </p>
 <p>I wrote to Moor House and to Cambridge immediately, to say what I had done:
fully
    explaining also why I had thus acted. Diana and <pb n="475"/> Mary approved the
step
    unreservedly. Diana announced that she would just give me time to get over the
    honeymoon, and then she would come and see me.</p>
```

```
 <p>
  <q>She had better not wait till then, Jane,</q> said Mr Rochester, when I read
her
   letter to him; <q>if she does, she will be too late, for our honeymoon will
shine
     our life long: its beams will only fade over your grave or mine.</q>
 </p>
 <p>How St John received the news I don't know: he never answered the letter in
which I
   communicated it: yet six months after he wrote to me, without, however,
mentioning
   Mr Rochester's name or alluding to my marriage. His letter was then calm, and
though
   very serious, kind. He has maintained a regular, though not very frequent
   correspondence ever since: he hopes I am happy, and trusts I am not of those who
   live without God in the world, and only mind earthly things.</p>
</div>
```

This encoding is expressed in TEI XML, a very widely used and standardised method of representing information about a document within the document itself. The transcribed words are complemented by special flags within angle brackets, called *tags*, which both characterise and mark the beginning and end of a string of characters. For example, each paragraph is marked by a tag at its start, and another at its end. We don't elaborate further on the syntax of TEI XML here. [1]

Aside from its syntax, it is important to note that this particular encoding represents a set of choices or priorities. We have chosen to prioritize and simplify representation of the words of the text over representation of the typographic layout associated with them in this source document. This makes it easier for a computer to answer questions about the words in the document than about its typesetting, reflecting our research priorities. This priority also leads us to suppress end-of-line hyphenation. Conceivably Brontë (or her printer) intended the word 'honeymoon' to appear as 'honey-moon' on its second appearance, though this seems unlikely: our decision to focus on Brontë's text, rather than on the printing of it in this particular edition, makes it impossible to be certain. Similarly, our decision makes it impossible to use this transcription as a means of statistically analysing hyphenation practice. An encoding makes explicit all and only those textual features of importance to the encoder.

It is not difficult to think of ways in which the encoding of even this short passage might readily be extended to address other research priorities. For example:

- a regularized form of the passages in dialect could be provided;
- footnotes glossing or commenting on any passage could be added;
- pointers linking parts of this text to others could be added;
- proper names of various kinds could be distinguished from the surrounding text;
- names could be classified as personal, geographical, or institutional
- detailed bibliographic information about the text's provenance and context could be prefixed to it;
- a linguistic analysis of the passage into sentences, clauses, words, etc., could be provided, each unit being associated with appropriate category codes;
- the text could be segmented into narrative or discourse units;

[1] Reference XML tutorials here

- systematic analysis or interpretation of the text could be included in the encoding, with potentially complex alignment or linkage between the text and the analysis, or between the text and one or more translations of it;
- passages in the text could be linked to images or sound held on other media.

In the remainder of this document, we present a number of TEI-recommended ways of supporting these and other encoding requirements. These ways generally involve the application of specific TEI XML elements, selected from the full range of possibilities documented in the TEI *Guidelines*. Like every other TEI project, TEI Simple proposes a view of the TEI Guidelines. This document defines and documents that view.

2 The Structure of a TEI Simple Document

A TEI-conformant text contains (a) a *TEI header* (marked up as a <teiHeader> element) and (b) one or more representations of a text. These representations may be of three kinds: a transcribed text, marked up as a <text> element; a collection of digital images representing the text, marked up using a <facsimile> element; or a literal transcription of one or more documents instantiating the text, marked up using the `<sourceDoc>` element.

These elements are combined together to form a single <TEI> element, which must be declared within the TEI *namespace*, and therefore usually takes the form <TEI xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"> [2].

Some aspects of the TEI header are described in more detail in section *15. The Electronic Title Page*. In what follows, we will focus chiefly on the use of the <text> element, though we describe one way of using the <facsimile> element in combination with it or alone in section *14. Encoding a digital facsimile* .

A text may be *unitary* (a single work) or *composite* (a collection of single works, such as an anthology). In either case, the text may have optional *front* or *back* matter such as title pages, prefaces, appendixes etc. We use the term *body* for whatever comes between these in the source document. We discuss various kinds of composite text in section *12. Composite and floating texts* below.

A unitary text will be encoded using an overall structure like this:

```
<TEI xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
 <teiHeader>
<!-- [ TEI Header information ] -->
 </teiHeader>
 <text>
  <front>
<!-- [ front matter ... ] -->
  </front>
  <body>
<!-- [ body of text ... ] -->
  </body>
  <back>
<!-- [ back matter ... ] -->
  </back>
 </text>
</TEI>
```

In each of the following sections we include a short list of the TEI *elements* under discussion, along with a brief description, and in most cases an example of how they are used. Throughout

[2] A *namespace* is an XML concept. Its function is to identify the vocabulary from which a group of element names are drawn, using a standard identifier resembling a web address. The namespace for TEI elements is `http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0`

the text, element names are linked to tjheir detailed reference documentation, as given in the TEI *Guidelines*. Note that most of the examples provided by the reference documentation, and all of the links, are not specific to TEI Simple.

For example, here are the elements discussed so far:

<TEI> (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, combining a single TEI header with one or more members of the model.resourceLike class. Multiple TEI elements may be combined to form a <teiCorpus> element.

<teiHeader> (TEI header) supplies descriptive and declarative metadata associated with a digital resource or set of resources.

<text> contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample.

<facsimile> contains a representation of some written source in the form of a set of images rather than as transcribed or encoded text.

3 Encoding the Body

As indicated above, a unitary text is encoded by means of a <text> element, which may contain the following elements:

<front> (front matter) contains any prefatory matter (headers, abstracts, title page, prefaces, dedications, etc.) found at the start of a document, before the main body.

<group> contains the body of a composite text, grouping together a sequence of distinct texts (or groups of such texts) which are regarded as a unit for some purpose, for example the collected works of an author, a sequence of prose essays, etc.

<body> (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter.

<back> (back matter) contains any appendixes, etc. following the main part of a text.

Elements specific to front and back matter are described below in section *13. Front and Back Matter*. In this section we discuss the elements making up the body of a text. A text must always have a body.

3.1 Text Division Elements and Global Attributes

The body of a prose text may be just a series of paragraphs or similar blocks of text, or these may be grouped together into chapters, sections, subsections, etc. The element is used to represent any such grouping of blocks.

** ** (text division) contains a subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text.

@type [att.typed] characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

The *type* attribute on the element may be used to supply a conventional name for this category of text division in order to distinguish them. Typical values might be 'book', 'chapter', 'section', 'part', 'poem', 'song', etc. TEI Simple does not constrain the range of values that may be used here.

A element may itself contain further, nested, s, thus mimicking the traditional structure of a book, which can be decomposed hierarchically into units such as parts, containing chapters, containing sections, and so on. TEI texts in general conform to this simple hierarchic model.

Here as elsewhere the *xml:id* attribute may be used to supply a unique identifier for the division, which may be used for cross references or other links to it, such as a commentary, as further discussed in section *3.7. Cross References and Links*. It is good practice to provide an *xml:id* attribute for every major structural unit in a text, and to derive its values in some systematic way, for example by appending a section number to a short code for the title of the work in question, as in the examples below.

The *n* attribute may be used to supply (additionally or alternatively) a short mnemonic name or number for a division, or any other element. If a conventional form of reference or abbreviation for the parts of a work already exists (such as the book/chapter/verse pattern of Biblical citations), the *n* attribute is the place to record it; unlike the identifier supplied by *xml:id*, it does not need to be unique.

The *xml:lang* attribute may be used to specify the language of the division. Languages are identified by an internationally defined code, as further discussed in section *3.5.3. Foreign Words or Expressions* below.

The *rendition* attribute may be used to supply information about the rendition (appearance) of a division, or any other element, as further discussed in section *3.5. Marking Highlighted Phrases* below. Note that this attribute is used to describe the appearance of the *source* text, rather than the appearance of any intended output when the encoded text is displayed. The two may of course be similar, or identical, but the TEI does not assume or require this.

These four attributes, *xml:id*, *n*, *xml:lang*, and *rendition* are so widely useful that they are allowed on any element in any TEI schema: they are called *global attributes*. Other attributes defined in the TEI Simple schema are discussed in section *3.7.3. Special Kinds of Linking*.

As noted above, the value of every *xml:id* attribute must be unique within a document. One simple way of ensuring this is to make it reflect the hierarchic structure of the document. For example, Smith's *Wealth of Nations* as first published consists of five books, each of which is divided into chapters, while some chapters are further subdivided into parts. We might define *xml:id* values for this structure as follows:

```
<body>
 <div xml:id="WN1" n="I" type="book">
  <div xml:id="WN101" n="I.1" type="chapter">
<!-- ... -->
  </div>
  <div xml:id="WN102" n="I.2" type="chapter">
<!-- ... -->
  </div>
<!-- ... -->
  <div xml:id="WN110" n="I.10"
   type="chapter">
   <div xml:id="WN1101" n="I.10.1"
    type="part">
<!-- ... -->
   </div>
   <div xml:id="WN1102" n="I.10.2"
    type="part">
<!-- ... -->
   </div>
  </div>
<!-- ... -->
 </div>
 <div xml:id="WN2" n="II" type="book">
<!-- ... -->
 </div>
</body>
```

A different numbering scheme may be used for *xml:id* and *n* attributes: this is often useful where a canonical reference scheme is used which does not tally with the structure of the work. For example, in a novel divided into books each containing chapters, where the chapters are numbered sequentially through the whole work, rather than within each book, one might use a scheme such as the following:

```
<body>
 <div xml:id="TS01" n="1" type="volume">
  <div xml:id="TS011" n="1" type="chapter">
<!-- ... -->
  </div>
  <div xml:id="TS012" n="2" type="chapter">
<!-- ... -->
  </div>
 </div>
 <div xml:id="TS02" n="2" type="volume">
  <div xml:id="TS021" n="3" type="chapter">
<!-- ... -->
  </div>
  <div xml:id="TS022" n="4" type="chapter">
<!-- ... -->
  </div>
 </div>
</body>
```

Here the work has two volumes, each containing two chapters. The chapters are numbered conventionally 1 to 4, but the *xml:id* values specified allow them to be regarded additionally as if they were numbered 1.1, 1.2, 2.1, 2.2.

3.2 Headings and Closings

Every may have a title or heading at its start, and (less commonly) a trailer such as 'End of Chapter 1' at its end. The following elements may be used to transcribe them:

<head> (heading) contains any type of heading, for example the title of a section, or the heading of a list, glossary, manuscript description, etc.

<trailer> contains a closing title or footer appearing at the end of a division of a text.

Some other elements which may be found at the beginning or ending of text divisions are discussed below in section *13.1.2. Prefatory Matter*.

Whether or not headings and trailers are included in a transcription is a matter for the individual transcriber to decide. Where a heading is completely regular (for example 'Chapter 1') or may be automatically constructed from attribute values (e.g. `<div type="chapter" n="1">`), it may be omitted; where it contains otherwise unrecoverable text it should always be included. For example, the start of Hardy's *Under the Greenwood Tree* might be encoded as follows:

```
<div xml:id="UGT1" n="Winter" type="Part">
 <div xml:id="UGT11" n="1" type="Chapter">
  <head>Mellstock-Lane</head>
  <p>To dwellers in a wood almost every species of tree ... </p>
 </div>
</div>
```

3.3 Textual Components

In prose texts such as the Bronte example above, the divisions are generally composed of paragraphs, represented as <p> elements, though in some circumstances it may be preferred to use the 'anonymous block' element <ab>. In poetic or dramatic texts different elements are used, representing verse lines and stanzas in the first case, and individual speeches or stage directions in the second. :

<p> (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose.

<ab> (anonymous block) contains any arbitrary component-level unit of text, acting as an anonymous container for phrase or inter level elements analogous to, but without the semantic baggage of, a paragraph.

<l> (verse line) contains a single, possibly incomplete, line of verse.

<lg> (line group) contains one or more verse lines functioning as a formal unit, e.g. a stanza, refrain, verse paragraph, etc.

<sp> (speech) contains an individual speech in a performance text, or a passage presented as such in a prose or verse text.

<speaker> contains a specialized form of heading or label, giving the name of one or more speakers in a dramatic text or fragment.

<stage> (stage direction) contains any kind of stage direction within a dramatic text or fragment.

We discuss each of these kinds of component separately below.

3.3.1 Verse

Here, for example, is the start of a poetic text in which verse lines and stanzas are tagged:

```
<lg n="I">
 <l>I Sing the progresse of a deathlesse soule,</l>
 <l>Whom Fate, with God made, but doth not controule,</l>
<!-- ... -->
 <l>A worke t'out weare Seths pillars, bricke and stone,</l>
 <l>And holy writs excepted) made to yeeld to none,</l>
</lg>
```

Note that the <l> element marks verse lines, not typographic lines: as elsewhere the original lineation of the source text is not therefore preserved by by this encoding. The <lb> element described in section *3.4. Page and Line Numbers* might additionally be used to mark typographic lines if so desired.

In a poetic text it may also be considered useful to identify the rhymes, for which the following element may be used:

<rhyme> marks the rhyming part of a metrical line.

@*label* provides a label (usually a single letter) to identify which part of a rhyme scheme this rhyming string instantiates.

The following example shows how this element might be used both to identify rhyming words or word parts and to assign each rhyme to a part of a rhyming pattern by means of its *label* attribute. The rhyming pattern here is specified by the *rhyme* attribute supplied on the <lg> representing the stanza within which the pattern operates.

```
<lg rhyme="ABCCBBA">
 <l>The sunlight on the <rhyme label="A">garden</rhyme>
 </l>
 <l>
  <rhyme label="A">Harden</rhyme>s and grows <rhyme label="B">cold</rhyme>,</l>
 <l>We cannot cage the <rhyme label="C">minute</rhyme>
 </l>
 <l>Wi<rhyme label="C">thin it</rhyme>s nets of <rhyme label="B">gold</rhyme>
 </l>
 <l>When all is <rhyme label="B">told</rhyme>
 </l>
 <l>We cannot beg for <rhyme label="A">pardon</rhyme>.</l>
</lg>
```

The *rhyme* attribute may be used independently of the <rhyme> element, or in combination with it, as above.

3.3.2 Drama

A dramatic text contains speeches, which may be in prose or verse, and will also contain stage directions. The <sp> element is used to represent each identified speech. It contains an optional speaker indication, marked with the <speaker> element, which can be followed by one or more <l> or <p> elements, depending on whether the speech is considered to be in prose or in verse. Stage directions, whether within or between speeches, are marked using the <stage> element.

For example:

```
<sp>
 <speaker>Vladimir</speaker>
 <p>Pull on your trousers.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
 <speaker>Estragon</speaker>
 <p>You want me to pull off my trousers?</p>
</sp>
<sp>
 <speaker>Vladimir</speaker>
 <p>Pull <emph>on</emph> your trousers.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
 <speaker>Vladimir</speaker>
 <p>
  <stage>(realizing his trousers are down)</stage>.
   True</p>
</sp>
<stage>He pulls up his trousers</stage>
<sp>
 <speaker>Vladimir</speaker>
 <p>Well? Shall we go?</p>
</sp>
<sp>
 <speaker>Estragon</speaker>
 <p>Yes, let's go.</p>
</sp>
<stage>They do not move.</stage>
```

In a verse drama, it is quite common to find that verse lines are split between speakers. The easiest way of encoding this is to use the *part* attribute to indicate that the lines so fragmented are incomplete:

```
<div type="Act" n="I">
 <head>ACT I</head>
 <div type="Scene" n="1">
  <head>SCENE I</head>
  <stage rendition="#italic"> Enter Barnardo and Francisco, two Sentinels, at
     several doors</stage>
  <sp>
   <speaker>Barn</speaker>
   <l part="Y">Who's there?</l>
  </sp>
  <sp>
   <speaker>Fran</speaker>
   <l>Nay, answer me. Stand and unfold yourself.</l>
  </sp>
```

```
  <sp>
   <speaker>Barn</speaker>
   <l part="I">Long live the King!</l>
  </sp>
  <sp>
   <speaker>Fran</speaker>
   <l part="M">Barnardo?</l>
  </sp>
  <sp>
   <speaker>Barn</speaker>
   <l part="F">He.</l>
  </sp>
  <sp>
   <speaker>Fran</speaker>
   <l>You come most carefully upon your hour.</l>
  </sp>
<!-- ... -->
 </div>
</div>
```

The value of the *part* attribute may indicate just that the element bearing it is a fragment rather than a complete verse line (`part="Y"`); alternatively it may indicate whether this is an initial (I), medial (M) or F (final) fragment.

The same mechanism may be applied to stanzas which are divided between two speakers:

```
<div>
 <sp>
  <speaker>First voice</speaker>
  <lg type="stanza" part="I">
   <l>But why drives on that ship so fast</l>
   <l>Withouten wave or wind?</l>
  </lg>
 </sp>
 <sp>
  <speaker>Second Voice</speaker>
  <lg part="F">
   <l>The air is cut away before.</l>
   <l>And closes from behind.</l>
  </lg>
 </sp>
<!-- ... -->
</div>
```

The <sp> element can also be used for dialogue presented in a prose work as if it were drama, as in the next example, which also demonstrates the use of the *who* attribute to bear a code identifying the speaker of the piece of dialogue concerned:

```
<div>
 <sp who="#OPI">
  <speaker>The reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
  <p>I do not think I have named a single unpresentable fish.</p>
 </sp>
 <sp who="#GRM">
  <speaker>Mr Gryll</speaker>
  <p>Bream, Doctor: there is not much to be said for bream.</p>
 </sp>
 <sp who="#OPI">
  <speaker>The Reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
```

```
  <p>On the contrary, sir, I think there is much to be said for him. In the first
     place....</p>
  <p>Fish, Miss Gryll -- I could discourse to you on fish by the hour: but for the
     present I will forbear.</p>
 </sp>
</div>
```

Here the *who* attribute values (#0PI etc.) are links, pointing to items in a list of the characters in the novel. In the case of a play, this list of characters might appear in the original source as a cast list or dramatic personae, which might be marked up using the <castList> element described in section *13.2.2. Specialised Front and Back Matter* below. Such a list would not, of course, be appropriate to provide descriptive information about each character, much of which does not appear in the original source. Instead a <particDesc> (participant description) element should be provided in the TEI Header, as further discussed in section particdesc below.

3.3.3 Other Kinds of Text Block

As mentioned above, the <ab> element should be used for blocks of text which are not clearly paragraphs, verse lines, or dramatic speeches. Typical examples include the canonical verses of the Bible, and the textual blocks of other ancient documents which predate the invention of the paragraph, such as Greek inscriptions or Egyptian hieroglyphs. The element is also useful as a means of encoding more specialised kinds of textual block, such as the question and answer structure of a catechism, or the highly formalised substructure of a legal document (if is not considered appropriate for these). In more modern documents, it can be used to encode semi-organized or fragmentary materials such as an artist's notebook or work in progress; or to faithfully capture the substructure of a file produced by an OCR sysytem.

3.4 Page and Line Numbers

Page and line breaks etc. may be marked with the following elements.

<pb> (page break) marks the start of a new page in a paginated document.

<lb> (line break) marks the start of a new (typographic) line in some edition or version of a text.

<cb> (column break) marks the beginning of a new column of a text on a multi-column page.

<milestone> marks a boundary point separating any kind of section of a text, typically but not necessarily indicating a point at which some part of a standard reference system changes, where the change is not represented by a structural element.

<fw> (forme work) contains a running head (e.g. a header, footer), catchword, or similar material appearing on the current page.

The <pb>, <cb>, and <lb> elements are special cases of a general class of elements known as *milestone*s because they mark reference points within a text. The generic <milestone> element can mark any kind of reference point: for example, a column break, the start of a new kind of section not otherwise tagged, a change of author or style, or in general any significant change in the text not enclosed by an XML element. Unlike other elements, milestone elements do not enclose a piece of text and make an assertion about it; instead they indicate a point in the text where something changes, as indicated by a change in the values of the milestone's attributes *unit*, which indicates the 'something' concerned, and *n* which indicates the new value.

The <lb>, <cb>, and <pb> elements are shortcuts or *syntactic sugar* for <milestone unit="line"/> <milestone unit="column"/> and <milestone unit="page"/> respectively.

When working from a paginated original, it is often useful to record its pagination, whether to simplify later proof-reading. or to align the transcribed text with a set of page images, as further discussed below.

Because <pb> and other milestone elements are empty, they may be placed freely within or between other elements. However, it is recommended practice always to put them at the *beginning* of whatever unit it is that their presence implies, and not to nest them within elements contained by that unit. For example, in the following example a page break occurs between two lines of a poem:

```
<l>Mary had a little lamb</l>
<pb n="13"/>
<l>Its fleece was white as snow</l>
```

The <pb> element should be placed ahead of all the text encoded on the 13th page. Contrast this with the following less accurate encoding:

```
<l>Mary had a little lamb</l>
<l>
 <pb n="13"/>Its fleece was white as snow
</l>
```

This is less accurate because it implies that the second verse line actually begins before the page break.

Similar considerations apply to line breaks (<lb>), though these are less frequently considered useful when encoding modern printed textual sources. When transcribing manuscripts or early printed books, however, it is often helpful to retain them in an encoding, if only to facilitate alignment of transcription and original. Like <pb>, the <lb> element should appear *before* the text of the line whose start it signals.

If features such as pagination or lineation are marked for more than one edition, the edition in question may be specified by the *ed* attribute. For example, in the following passage we indicate where the page breaks occur in two different editions (ED1 and ED2)

```
<p>I wrote to Moor House and to Cambridge immediately, to say what I had done:
fully explaining also why I had thus acted. Diana and <pb ed="ED1" n="475"/> Mary
approved the step unreservedly. Diana announced that she would
<pb ed="ED2" n="485"/>just give me time to get over the honeymoon, and then she
would come and see
me.</p>
```

When transcribing from a paginated source, the encoder must decide whether to suppress such features as running titles, page signatures, catch words etc., to replace them by a simplified representation using the <pb> element, perhaps using the *n* attribute to preserve some of the information, or to preserve them entirely using the <fw> element. The latter strategy is appropriate in encodings which aim to retain as much information as possible about the original typography; it will however make more complex the processing of the source for other purposes, as in the following example:

```
<l>He also fix'd the wandering
QUEEN OF NIGHT,</l>
<fw type="sig">Ii 2</fw>
<fw type="catch">Whether</fw>
<pb n="244"/>
<l>Whether she wanes into a scanty orb</l>...
<!-- Thomson, Seasons, 1730-->
```

As noted above, the <pb> element is also used to align parts of a transcription with a digital image of the page concerned. This may be done in a very simple but inflexible way by using the *facs* attribute to point to each page image concerned

```
<p>I wrote to Moor House and
to Cambridge immediately, to say what I had done: fully explaining also why I had
thus acted. Diana and <pb ed="ED1" n="475" facs="ed1p475.png"/> Mary approved the
step unreservedly... </p>
```

The *facs* attribute can supply (as here) a filename, or any other form of URI, if for example the page image is stored remotely. One drawback of this simplistic approach is that there must be exactly one image file per page of text. It is not therefore suitable in the case where the available page images represent double page spreads, or where there are multiple images of the same page (for example at different resolutions).

A more powerful approach, discussed in section simple-fax below, is to use the <facsimile> element to define the organisation of the set of images representing the text, and then use the *facs* attribute to point to individual components of that representation.

3.5 Marking Highlighted Phrases

3.5.1 Changes of Typeface, etc.

Highlighted words or phrases are those made visibly different from the rest of the text, typically by a change of type font, handwriting style, ink colour etc., which is intended to draw the reader's attention to some associated change.

The global *rendition* attribute can be attached to any element, and used wherever necessary to specify details of the highlighting used for it in the source. For example, a heading rendered in bold might be tagged <head rendition="simple:bold">, and one in italic <head rendition="simple:italic">.

The values used for the *rendition* attribute point to definitions provided for the formatting concerned. These definitions are typically provided by a <rendition> element in the document's Header, as further discussed in section *15.2.3. Tagging Declaration*.

It is not always possible or desirable to interpret the reasons for such changes of rendering in a text. In such cases, the element <hi> may be used to mark a sequence of highlighted text without making any claim as to its status.

<hi> (highlighted) marks a word or phrase as graphically distinct from the surrounding text, for reasons concerning which no claim is made.

In the following example, the use of a distinct typeface for the subheading and for the included name are recorded but not interpreted:

```
<p>
 <hi rendition="simple:blackletter">And
   this Indenture further witnesseth</hi> that the said <hi rendi-
tion="simple:italic">Walter Shandy</hi>, merchant, in consideration of the
said intended marriage ...
</p>
```

Alternatively, where the cause for the highlighting can be identified with confidence, a number of other, more specific, elements are available.

<foreign> identifies a word or phrase as belonging to some language other than that of the surrounding text.

<label> contains any label or heading used to identify part of a text, typically but not exclusively in a list or glossary.

<title> contains a title for any kind of work.

Some features (notably quotations titles, and foreign words) may be found in a text either marked by highlighting, or with quotation marks. In either case, the element <q> (as discussed in the following section) should be used. Again, the global *rendition* can be used to record details of the highlighting used in the source if this is thought useful.

As an example of the elements defined here, consider the following sentence: 'On the one hand the *Nibelungenlied* is associated with the new rise of romance of twelfth-century France, the *romans d'antiquité*, the romances of Chrétien de Troyes, and the German adaptations of these works by Heinrich van Veldeke, Hartmann von Aue, and Wolfram von Eschenbach.' Interpreting the role of the highlighting, the sentence might be encoded as follows :

```
<p>On the one hand the
<title>Nibelungenlied</title> is associated with the new rise of romance of
twelfth-century France, the <foreign>romans d'antiquité</foreign>, the romances of
Chrétien de Troyes, ...</p>
```

Describing only the appearance of the original, it might be encoded like this:

```
<p>On the one hand the <hi rendition="simple:italic">Nibelungenlied</hi> is associ-
ated with the new rise of
romance of twelfth-century France, the <hi rendition="simple:italic">romans
   d'antiquité</hi>, the romances of Chrétien de Troyes, ...</p>
```

3.5.2 Quotations and Related Features

Like changes of typeface, quotation marks are conventionally used to denote several different features within a text, of which the most frequent is quotation, though many other features are possible. The full Guidelines provide additional elements such as **<mentioned>** or **<said>** to distinguish some of these features. In TEI Simple however, we use the <quote> element for quotation only, and the <q> element for all other material found within quotation marks in the text

<q> (quoted) contains material which is distinguished from the surrounding text using quotation marks or a similar method, for any one of a variety of reasons including, but not limited to: direct speech or thought, technical terms or jargon, authorial distance, quotations from elsewhere, and passages that are mentioned but not used.

<quote> (quotation) contains a phrase or passage attributed by the narrator or author to some agency external to the text.

Here is a simple example of a quotation:

```
<p>Few dictionary makers are likely to
forget Dr. Johnson's description of the lexicographer as <quote>a harmless
   drudge.</quote>
</p>
```

As elsewhere, the way that a citation or quotation was printed (for example, *in-line* or set off as a *display* or *block quotation*), may be represented using the *rendition* attribute. This may also be used to indicate the kind of quotation marks used.

Direct speech interrupted by a narrator can be represented simply by ending the <q> element and beginning it again after the interruption, as in the following example:

```
<p>
 <q>Who-e debel
   you?</q> — he at last said — <q>you no speak-e, damme, I kill-e.</q> And so
saying, the lighted tomahawk began flourishing about me in the dark.
</p>
```

If it is important to convey the idea that the two <q> elements together make up a single speech, the linking attributes *next* and *prev* may be used, as described in section *3.7.3. Special Kinds of Linking*.

Direct speech may be accompanied by a reference to the source or speaker, using the *who* attribute, whether or not this is explicit in the text, as in the following example:

```
<q who="#Wilson">Spaulding, he came down into the office just this day eight weeks
with this very
paper in his hand, and he says:—<q who="#Spaulding">I wish to the Lord, Mr.
   Wilson, that I was a red-headed man.</q>
</q>
```

This example also demonstrates how quotations may be embedded within other quotations: one speaker (Wilson) quotes another speaker (Spaulding).

The creator of the electronic text must decide whether quotation marks are replaced by the tags or whether the tags are added and the quotation marks kept. If the quotation marks are removed from the text, the *rendition* attribute may be used to record the way in which they were rendered in the copy text.

3.5.3 Foreign Words or Expressions

Words, phrases, or longer stretches of test that are not in the main language of the texts may be tagged as such in one of two ways. The global *xml:lang* attribute may be attached to any element to show that it uses some other language than that of the surrounding text. Where there is no applicable element, the element <foreign> may be used, again using the *xml:lang* attribute. For example:

```
<p>John has real <foreign xml:lang="fr">savoir-faire</foreign>.</p>
<p>Have you read <title xml:lang="de">Die Dreigroschenoper</title>?</p>
```

As these examples show, the <foreign> element should not be used to tag foreign words if some other more specific element such as <title>, or applies.

The value of the *xml:lang* attribute on an element applies hierarchically to everything contained by that element, unless overridden:

```
<div xml:lang="la">
 <s>Pars haec Latine composita est.</s>
 <s xml:lang="en">Except that this sentence is in English.</s>
 <s>Vita brevis, ars longa.</s>
</div>
```

Here we specify that the whole element uses the language with the coded identifier 'la' i.e., Latin. Since it is contained by that there is no need to supply this information again for the first <s> element. The second <s> element however overrides this value, and indicates that its content is in English (the language with identifier `en`). The third <s> element is again in Latin.

The codes used to identify languages, supplied on the *xml:lang* attribute, are defined by an international standard [3], as further explained in the relevant section of the TEI Guidelines. Some simple example codes for a few languages are given here:

[3] The relevant Internet standard is *Best Current Practice 47* (`http://tools.ietf.org/html/bcp47`). The authoritative list of registered subtags is maintained by IANA and is available at `http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry`. For a general overview of the construction of language tags, see `http://www.w3.org/International/articles/language-tags/`, and for a practical step-by-step guide, see `http://www.w3.org/International/questions/qa-choosing-language-tags`.

zh	Chinese	grc	Ancient Greek
en	English	el	Greek
enm	Middle English	ja	Japanese
fr	French	la	Latin
de	German	sa	Sanskrit

3.6 Notes

A note is any additional comment found in a text, marked in some way as being out of the main textual stream. A note is always attached to some part of the text, implicitly or explicitly: we call this its target, or its *point of attachment*. The element <note> should be used to mark any kind of note whether it appears as a separate block of text in the main text area, at the foot of the page, at the end of the chapter or volume, in the margin, or in some other place.

<note> contains a note or annotation.

Notes may be in a different hand or typeface, may be authorial or editorial, and may have been added later. The attributes *type* and *resp* can be used to distinguish between different kinds of notes or identify their authors.

In a printed or written text, the *point of attachment* for a note is typically represented by a siglum such as an alphanumerical or other character, often in superscripted form. When encoding such a text, it is conventional to replace this siglum by a note element containing the annotation itself, as in the following example:

```
<p>...some text <note xml:id="n7">a note about some text</note> .... </p>
```

An alternative approach is to encode the point of attachment wherever it appears in the text, using for example the <ref> element discussed in the next section, and to place the <note> element anywhere convenient. The two can then be associated by using the *target* attribute on the <ref> element to point to the <note> element, as in the following example, in which the superscripted 7 indicating the point of attachment has been retained as part of the encoding:

```
<p>...some text <ref target="#n7"
  rendition="simple:superscript">7</ref> .... <note xml:id="n7">a note about some
text</note>
</p>
```

It may however be problematic to determine the precise position of the attachment point, particularly in the case of marginal notes. A marginal note may also be hard to distinguish from a label or subheading which introduces the text with which it is associated. Where the purpose of the note is clearly to label the associated text, rather than to comment on it, the element <label> may be preferable. Where it is clearly a subheading attached to a distinct subdivision, it may be preferable to start a new element and encode the subheading as a <head>. Note however that a <head> cannot be inserted anywhere except at the beginning of a . And where (as in some Early Modern English plays) marginal annotation is systematically used to identify speakers, it may be better to represent these using the <speaker> element introduced above. In cases of doubt, the encoder should decide on a clear policy and preferably document it for the use of others.

3.7 Cross References and Links

Any kind of cross reference or link found at one point in a text which points to another part of the same or another document may be encoded using the <ref>element discussed in this

section. Implicit links (such as the association between two parallel texts, or that between a text and its interpretation) may be encoded using the linking attributes discussed in section *3.7.3. Special Kinds of Linking*.

3.7.1 Simple Cross References

<ref> (reference) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment.

Usually, the presence of a cross-reference or link will be indicated by some text or symbol in the source being encoded, which will then become the content of the <ref> element. Occasionally, however, and frequently in the case of a born digital document, the exact form and appearance of the cross reference text will be determined dynamically by the software processing the document. In such cases, the <ref> element will have no content, and serve simply to mark a point from which a link is to be made, along with the target of the link.

The following two forms, for example, are logically equivalent :

```
See especially <ref target="#SEC12">section
12 on page 34</ref>.
```

```
See especially <ref target="#SEC12"/>.
```

In both cases, there is a cross reference from the position in the source document immediately following the word *especially* to whatever element in the encoded document has the identifier SEC12. In the first case, the encoder has supplied the required form of the cross reference 'section 12 on page 34'; in the second, the task of generating an appropriate form of cross reference has been left to the formatting software. Perhaps the pagination and section numbers of the document in question are not yet determined; perhaps the cross reference sould be replaced by a big red button. In either case, however, the value of the *target* attribute must be the identifier of some other element within the current document. Since the passage or phrase being pointed at must bear an identifier, it must be an element of some kind. In the following example, the cross reference is to a element:

```
 ... see especially <ref target="#SEC12"/>.
...
<div xml:id="SEC12">
 <head>Concerning Identifiers</head>
<!-- ... -->
</div>
```

Because the *xml:id* attribute is global, any element in a TEI document may be pointed to in this way. In the following example, a paragraph has been given an identifier so that it may be pointed at:

```
 ... this is discussed in <ref target="#pspec">the paragraph on links</ref> ...
<p xml:id="pspec">Links may be
made to any kind of element ...</p>
```

Sometimes the target of a cross reference does not correspond with any particular feature of a text, and so may not be tagged as an element of some kind. If the desired target is simply a point in the current document, the easiest way to mark it is by introducing an <anchor> element at the appropriate spot. If the target is some sequence of words not otherwise tagged, the <seg> element may be used to mark them. These two elements are described as follows:

<anchor> (anchor point) attaches an identifier to a point within a text, whether or not it corresponds with a textual element.

<seg> (arbitrary segment) represents any segmentation of text below the 'chunk' level.

In the following example, <ref> elements have been used to represent points in this text which are to be linked in some way to other parts of it; in the first case to a point, and in the second, to a sequence of words:

```
 Returning to <ref target="#ABCD">the point
where I dozed off</ref>, I noticed that <ref target="#EFGH">three words</ref> had
been circled in red by a previous reader
```

This encoding requires that elements with the specified identifiers (`ABCD` and `EFGH` in this example) are to be found somewhere else in the current document. Assuming that no element already exists to carry these identifiers, the <anchor> and <seg> elements may be used:

```
 .... <anchor type="bookmark" xml:id="ABCD"/> .... ....<seg type="target" xml:id="EFGH">
... </seg> ...
```

The *type* attribute should be used (as above) to distinguish amongst different purposes for which these general purpose elements might be used in a text. Some other uses are discussed in section *3.7.3. Special Kinds of Linking* below.

3.7.2 Pointing to other documents

So far, we have shown how the <ref> element may be used for cross-references or links whose targets occur within the same document as their source. The element may also be used to refer to elements in any other XML document or resource, such as a document on the web, or a database component. This is possible because the value of the *target* attribute may be any valid *universal resource indicator* (URI)[4].

A URI may reference a web page or just a part of one, for example `http://www.tei-c.org/index.xml#SEC2`. The hash sign indicates that what follows it is the identifier of an element to be located within the XML document identified by what precedes it: this example will therefore locate an element which has an *xml:id* attribute value of SEC2 within the document retrieved from `http://www.tei-c.org/index.xml`. In the examples we have discussed so far, the part to the left of the sharp sign has been omitted: this is understood to mean that the referenced element is to be located within the current document.

It is also possible to define an abbreviated form of the URI, using a predefined *prefix* separated from the rest of the code by a colon, as for example `cesr:SEC2`. This is known as a *private URI*, since the prefix is not standardized (except that the prefix `xml:` is reserved for use by XML itself). A <prefixDef> element should be supplied within the TEI Header specifying how the prefix (here `cesr`) should be translated to give a full URL for the link. This is particularly useful if a document contains many references to an external document such as an authority file.

Parts of an XML document can be specified by means of other more sophisticated mechanisms using a language called Xpointer, also defined by the W3C. This is useful when, for example, the elements to be linked to do not bear identifiers. Further information about this and other forms of link addressing is provided in chapter 16 of the TEI Guidelines but is beyond the scope of the present document.

[4] A full definition of this term, defined by the W3C (the consortium which manages the development and maintenance of the World Wide Web), is beyond the scope of this tutorial: however, the most frequently encountered version of a URI is the familiar 'URL' used to indicate a web page, such as `http://www.tei-c.org/index.xml`

3.7.3 Special Kinds of Linking

The following special purpose *linking* attributes are defined for every element in the TEI Simple schema:

ana links an element with its interpretation.

corresp links an element with one or more other corresponding elements.

next links an element to the next element in an aggregate.

prev links an element to the previous element in an aggregate.

The *ana* (analysis) attribute is intended for use where a set of abstract analyses or interpretations have been defined somewhere within a document, as further discussed in section *10. Analysis*. For example, a linguistic analysis of the sentence 'John loves Nancy' might be encoded as follows:

```
<seg type="sentence" ana="#SVO">
 <seg type="lex" ana="#NP1">John</seg>
 <seg type="lex" ana="#VVI">loves</seg>
 <seg type="lex" ana="#NP1">Nancy</seg>
</seg>
```

This encoding implies the existence elsewhere in the document of elements with identifiers SVO, NP1, and VV1 where the significance of these particular codes is explained. Note the use of the <seg> element to mark particular components of the analysis, distinguished by the *type* attribute.

The *corresp* (corresponding) attribute provides a simple way of representing some form of correspondence between two elements in a text. For example, in a multilingual text, it may be used to link translation equivalents, as in the following example

```
<seg xml:lang="fr" xml:id="FR1"
 corresp="#EN1">Jean aime Nancy</seg>
<seg xml:lang="en" xml:id="EN1"
 corresp="#FR1">John loves Nancy</seg>
```

The same mechanism may be used for a variety of purposes. In the following example, it has been used to represent the correspondences between 'the show' and 'Shirley', and between 'NBC' and 'the network':

```
<p>
 <title xml:id="shirley">Shirley</title>,
which made its Friday night debut only a month ago, was not listed on
<name xml:id="nbc">NBC</name>'s new schedule, although <seg xml:id="network" cor-
resp="#nbc">the network</seg> says <seg xml:id="show" corresp="#shirley">the
   show</seg> still is being considered.
</p>
```

The *next* and *prev* attributes provide a simple way of linking together the components of a discontinuous element, as in the following example:

```
<q xml:id="Q1a" next="#Q1b">Who-e
debel you?</q> — he at last said — <q xml:id="Q1b" prev="#Q1a">you no speak-e,
damme, I kill-e.</q> And so saying, the lighted tomahawk began flourishing about
me in the dark.
```

4 Editorial Interventions

The process of encoding an electronic text has much in common with the process of editing a manuscript or other text for printed publication. In either case a conscientious editor may wish to record both the original state of the source and any editorial correction or other change made in it. The elements discussed in this and the next section provide some facilities for meeting these needs.

4.1 Correction and Normalization

The following elements may be used to mark *correction*, that is editorial changes introduced where the editor believes the original to be erroneous:

<corr> (correction) contains the correct form of a passage apparently erroneous in the copy text.

<sic> (Latin for thus or so) contains text reproduced although apparently incorrect or inaccurate.

The following elements may be used to mark *normalization*, that is editorial changes introduced for the sake of consistency or modernization of a text:

<orig> (original form) contains a reading which is marked as following the original, rather than being normalized or corrected.

<reg> (regularization) contains a reading which has been regularized or normalized in some sense.

Consider, for example, the following famous passage as it appears in the first quarto printing of Shakespeare's *Henry V*: in particular the phrase we might transcribe directly as

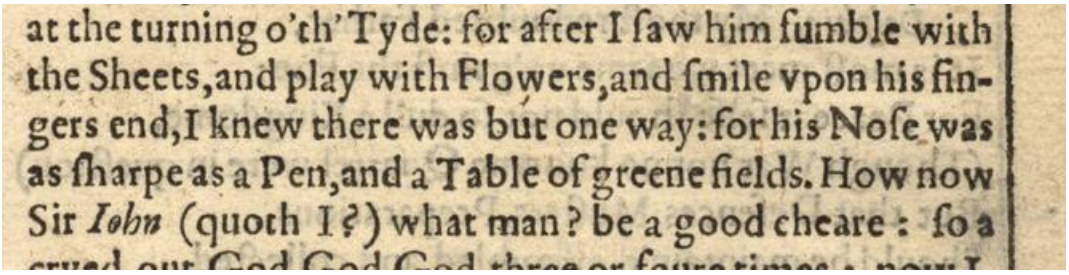
at the turning o'th' Tyde: for after I ſaw him fumble with
the Sheets, and play with Flowers, and ſmile vpon his fin-
gers end, I knew there was but one way: for his Noſe was
as ſharpe as a Pen, and a Table of greene fields. How now
Sir *Iohn* (quoth I?) what man? be a good cheare: ſo a

Figure 1: Detail from *Henry V*, first quarto (1600)

```
... for his Nose was as sharp as a Pen, and a Table of green feelds
```

A modern editor might wish to make a number of interventions here, specifically to modernize (or normalise) the Elizabethan spellings of *a'* and *feelds* for *he* and *fields* respectively. They might also want to emend *table* to *babbl'd*, following an editorial tradition that goes back to the 18th century Shakespearian scholar Lewis Theobald. The following encoding would then be appropriate:

```
... for his Nose was as sharp as a Pen and
<reg>he</reg>
<corr resp="#Theobald">babbl'd</corr> of green
<reg>fields</reg>
```

A more conservative or source-oriented editor, however, might want to retain the original, but at the same time signal that some of the readings it contains are in some sense anomalous:

```
... for his Nose was as
sharp as a Pen, and <orig>a</orig>
<sic>Table</sic> of green
<orig>feelds</orig>
```

Finally, a modern digital editor may decide to combine both possibilities in a single composite text, using the <choice> element.
<choice> groups a number of alternative encodings for the same point in a text.
This allows an editor to indicate where alternative encodings are possible:

```
... for his Nose was as sharp as a
Pen, and <choice>
 <orig>a</orig>
 <reg>he</reg>
</choice>
<choice>
 <corr resp="#Theobald">babbl'd</corr>
 <sic>Table</sic>
</choice> of green

<choice>
 <orig>feelds</orig>
 <reg>fields</reg>
</choice>
```

4.2 Omissions, Deletions, and Additions

In addition to correcting or normalizing words and phrases, editors and transcribers may also supply missing material, omit material, or transcribe material deleted or crossed out in the source. In addition, some material may be particularly hard to transcribe because it is hard to make out on the page. The following elements may be used to record such phenomena:

<add> (addition) contains letters, words, or phrases inserted in the source text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector.

<gap> indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible, invisible, or inaudible.

<del> (deletion) contains a letter, word, or passage deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise indicated as superfluous or spurious in the copy text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector.

<unclear> contains a word, phrase, or passage which cannot be transcribed with certainty because it is illegible or inaudible in the source.

<supplied> signifies text supplied by the transcriber or editor for any reason; for example because the original cannot be read due to physical damage, or because of an obvious omission by the author or scribe.

<subst> (substitution) groups one or more deletions with one or more additions when the combination is to be regarded as a single intervention in the text.

These elements may be used to record changes made by an editor, by the transcriber, or (in manuscript material) by the author or scribe. For example, if the source for an electronic text read 'The following elements are provided for for simple editorial interventions.' then it might be felt desirable to correct the obvious error, but at the same time to record the deletion of the superfluous second *for*, thus:

```
The
following elements are provided for <del resp="#LB">for</del> simple editorial
interventions.
```

The attribute value #LB on the *resp* attribute is used to point to a fuller definition (typically in a <respStmt> element) for the person or other agency responsible for correcting the duplication of *for*.

If the source read 'The following elements provided for simple editorial interventions.' (i.e. if the word *are* had been inadvertently dropped) then the the scholar identified as LB might choose to encode the corrected text as follows:

```
The following elements <add resp="#LB">are</add> provided for simple editorial
interventions.
```

These elements may also be used to record the actual writing process, for example to record passages which have been deleted, added, corrected etc. whether by the author of a literary text or by a scribe copying out a manuscript. An analysis of such documentary modifications may be essential before a reading text can be presented, and is clearly of importance in the editorial process.

The example is taken from the surviving authorial manuscript of a poem by the English writer Wilfred Owen, a part of which is shown here:

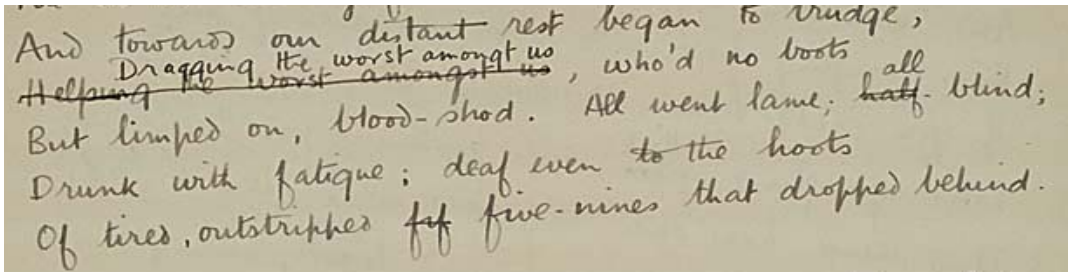

Figure 2: Detail from *Dulce et decorum est* autograph manuscript in the English Faculty Library, Oxford University.

Owen first wrote 'Helping the worst amongst us', but then deleted it, adding 'Dragging the worst amongt us' over the top. In the same way, he revised the phrase 'half–blind' by deleting the 'half–' and adding 'all' above it. In the last line, he started a word beginning 'fif' before deleting it and writing the word 'five–nines'. We can encode all of this as follows:

```
<l>And towards our distant rest began to trudge,</l>
<l>
 <subst>
  <del>Helping the worst amongst us</del>
  <add>Dragging the worst amongt us</add>
 </subst>, who'd no boots
</l>
<l>But limped on, blood–shod. All went lame; <subst>
  <del status="shortEnd">half–</del>
  <add>all</add>
 </subst> blind;</l>
<l>Drunk with fatigue ; deaf even to the hoots</l>
<l>Of tired, outstripped <del>fif</del> five–nines that dropped behind.</l>
```

The tags <add> and <del> elements are used to enclose passages added or deleted respectively. Additional attributes are available such as *resp* to indicate responsibility for the modification, or *place* to indicate where in the text (for example, above or below the line) the modification has been made. Where the encoder wishes to assert that the addition and deletion make up a single editorial act of substitution, these elements can be combined within a <subst> element as shown above.

A very careful examination of Owen's second modification shows that he really did write 'amongt' rather than 'amongst', presumably in error. An equally careful editor wishing to restore the missing 's' might use the <supplied> element to indicate that they have done so:

```
<add>Dragging the worst among<supplied resp="#ED">s</supplied>t us</add>
```

Here the *resp* attribute has been used to indicate that the S was not supplied by Owen but by someone else, specifically the person documented elsewhere by an element with the identifier ED.

Similarly, the <unclear> and <gap> elements may be used together to indicate the omission of illegible material; the following example also shows the use of <add> for a conjectural emendation:

```
One hundred & twenty good regulars joined
to me <unclear>
 <gap reason="indecipherable"/>
</unclear> & instantly, would aid me
signally <add hand="#ed">in?</add> an enterprise against Wilmington.
```

The <del> element marks material which is deleted in a source, but has been transcribed as part of the electronic text all the same, while <gap> marks the location of source material which is omitted from the electronic text, whether it is legible or not. A language corpus, for example, might omit long quotations in foreign languages. The <desc> element can be used inside the <gap> element to provide a brief characterisation of the omitted material, as in the following examples:

```
<p> ... An example of a list appearing
in a fief ledger of <name type="place">Koldinghus</name>
 <date>1611/12</date> is given below. It shows cash income from a sale of
honey.</p>
<gap extent="50 lines">
 <desc>quotation from ledger (in
   Danish)</desc>
</gap>
<p>A description of the overall structure of the account is once
again ... </p>
```

Language corpora (particular those constructed before the widespread use of scanners) often systematically omit figures and mathematics:

```
<p>At the bottom of your screen below the
mode line is the <term>minibuffer</term>. This is the area where Emacs echoes the
commands you enter and where you specify filenames for Emacs to find, values for
search and replace, and so on. <gap reason="graphic">
  <desc>diagram of Emacs
      screen</desc>
 </gap>
</p>
```

4.3 Abbreviations and their Expansion

Like names, dates, and numbers, abbreviations may be transcribed as they stand or expanded; they may be left unmarked, or encoded using the following elements:

<abbr> (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort.

<expan> (expansion) contains the expansion of an abbreviation.

The <abbr> element is useful as a means of distinguishing semi-lexical items such as acronyms or jargon:

```
Every
manufacturer of <abbr>3GL</abbr> or <abbr>4GL</abbr> languages is currently nailing
on
<abbr>OOP</abbr> extensions
```

The *type* attribute may be used to distinguish types of abbreviation by their function.

The <expan> element is used to mark an expansion supplied by an encoder. This element is particularly useful in the transcription of manuscript materials. For example, the character p with a bar through its descender as a conventional representation for the word per is commonly encountered in Medieval European manuscripts. An encoder may choose to expand this as follows:

```
<expan>per</expan>
```

To record both an abbreviation and its expansion, the <choice> element mentioned above may be used to group the abbreviated form with its proposed expansion:

```
<choice>
 <abbr>wt</abbr>
 <expan>with</expan>
</choice>
```

The elements <expan> and <abbr> should contain a full word, or the abbreviated form of a full word respectively. If it is required to tag smaller components of an abbreviated word, the following elements are also available in TEI Simple:

<am> (abbreviation marker) contains a sequence of letters or signs present in an abbreviation which are omitted or replaced in the expanded form of the abbreviation.

<ex> (editorial expansion) contains a sequence of letters added by an editor or transcriber when expanding an abbreviation.

For a fuller discussion of abbreviations and the intricacies of representing them consult the section on Abbreviations and Expansion in the *Guidelines*.

5 Names, Codes, and Numbers

The TEI scheme defines elements for a large number of 'data-like' features which may appear almost anywhere within almost any kind of text. These features may be of particular interest in a range of disciplines; they all relate to objects external to the text itself, such as the names of persons and places, strings of code, formulae, or numbers and dates. These items may also pose particular problems for natural language processing (NLP) applications. The elements described here, by making such features explicit, reduce the complexity of processing texts containing them.

5.1 Names and Referring Strings

A *referring string* is any phrase which refers to some person, place, object, etc. A *name* is a referring string which contains proper nouns and honorifics only. Two elements are provided to mark such strings:

<rs> (referencing string) contains a general purpose name or referring string.

<name> (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase.

The *type* attribute is used to distinguish amongst (for example) names of persons, places and organizations, where this is possible:

```
<q>My dear <name type="person">Mr.
   Bennet</name>, </q> said his lady to him one day,
<q>have you heard that <name type="place">Netherfield Park</name> is let at
last?</q>
```

```
It being one of the principles of the
<name type="organization">Circumlocution Office</name> never, on any account
whatsoever, to give a straightforward answer, <name type="person">Mr Barna-
cle</name>
said,
<q>Possibly.</q>
```

As the following example shows, the <rs> element may be used for a reference to a person, place, etc, which does not contain a proper noun or noun phrase.

```
<q>My dear <name type="person">Mr.
   Bennet</name>,</q> said <rs type="person">his lady</rs> to him one
day...
```

Simply tagging something as a name is rarely enough to enable automatic processing of personal names into the canonical forms usually required for reference purposes. The name as it appears in the text may be inconsistently spelled, partial, or vague. Moreover, name prefixes such as *van* or *de la*, may or may not be included as part of the reference form of a name, depending on the language and country of origin of the bearer.

The *ref* attribute provides a way of linking a name with a description of the object being named, and may thus act as a normalized identifier for it. It is also very useful as a means of gathering together all references to the same individual or location scattered throughout a document:

```
<q>My dear <name type="person" ref="#BENM1">Mr. Bennet</name>, </q> said
<rs type="person" ref="#BENM2">his lady</rs> to him
one day,
<q>have you heard that <name type="place" ref="#NETP1">Netherfield
   Park</name> is let at last?</q>
```

The values used for the *ref* attribute here (`#BENM1` etc.) are pointers; in this case indicating an element with the identifier `BENM1` etc. somewhere in the current document, though any form of URI could be used. The element indicated will typically (for a person) be a <person> element, listed within a <particDesc> element, or (for a place) a <place> element, listed within a <settingDesc> element in the TEI Header, as further discussed in *15.3. The Profile Description* below.

This use should be distinguished from the case of the <reg> (regularization) element, which provides a means of marking the standard form of a referencing string as demonstrated below:

```
<name type="person" key="WADLM1">
 <choice>
  <sic>Walter de la Mare</sic>
  <reg>de la Mare,
     Walter</reg>
 </choice>
</name> was born at <name key="Ch1" type="place">Charlton</name>, in
<name key="KT1" type="county">Kent</name>, in 1873.
```

5.2 Formulae, codes, and special characters

The following elements may be useful when marking up sequences of text that represent mathematical expressions, chemical formulae, and the like:

<formula> contains a mathematical or other formula.

<g> (character or glyph) represents a glyph, or a non-standard character.

In many cases, a simple Unicode character suffices to represent the superscript or subscript digits and other symbols which may appear inside a mathematical formula:

```
<formula>E=mc²</formula>
```

In other more complex cases, the encoder may choose to use a different XML scheme (such as MathML) to encode the content of a formula, or a non-XML notation. These possibilities are not discussed further here.

The <g> element is useful in the case that no Unicode character exists to represent the character or glyph required. Its *ref* attribute can be used to point to a definition of the symbol intended, while its content (if any) represents a Unicode approximation to it:

```
...Thereto
<g ref="#air">[air]</g> and ...
```

The TEI header provides a number of additional elements (not further discussed here) for the definition of such non-Unicode characters. These appear within the <charDecl> element of the TEI Header. For the preceding example, we might provide a definition for the symbol concerned like this:

```
<char xml:id="air">
 <charName>ALCHEMICAL SYMBOL FOR AIR</charName>
 <mapping type="standard">🜁</mapping>
</char>
```

Further details of these and related elements are provided in section http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/WD.html#D25-20 of the TEI Guidelines.

The following elements are useful for stretches of code or similar formal language appearing within a text:

<code> contains literal code from some formal language such as a programming language.

<email> (electronic mail address) contains an email address identifying a location to which email messages can be delivered.

```
 This can be expressed in XML as follows :
<code>&lt;date notBefore="2016-06-23"/></code> Contact the author at

<email>lou.burnard@gmail.com</email>
```

Note in this example that characters which have a syntactic function in XML (such as the ampersand or the angle bracket) must be represented within a Simple document by means of an entity reference such as `<` or `&`.

The element <ref> discussed in section *3.7. Cross References and Links* should be used to represent a coded reference such as a link given as a URL within a text, either as content or as an attribute value:

```
<p>Further discussion of <ref target="http://www.tei-c.org/">the Text Encoding
   Initiative website</ref> may be found at <ref>http://www.tei-c.org/</ref>
</p>
```

5.3 Dates and Times

The following elements are provided for the detailed encoding of times and dates:

<date> contains a date in any format.

<time> contains a phrase defining a time of day in any format.

These elements have a number of attributes which can be used to provide normalised versions of their values in various ways.

att.datable provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or datable events.

- @*period* supplies a pointer to some location defining a named period of time within which the datable item is understood to have occurred.
- @*when [att.datable.w3c]* supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.
- @*notBefore [att.datable.w3c]* specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.
- @*notAfter [att.datable.w3c]* specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

The *when* attribute specifies a normalized form for the date or time, using one of the standard formats defined by ISO 8601. Partial dates or times (e.g. '1990', 'September 1990', 'twelvish') can be expressed by omitting a part of the value supplied, as in the following examples:

```
<date when="1980-02-21">21 Feb
1980</date>
<date when="1990">1990</date>
<date when="1990-09">September
1990</date>
<date when="--09">September</date>
<date when="2001-09-11T12:48:00">Sept
11th, 12 minutes before 9
am</date>
```

These attributes are typically used to make a date or time more easily processable, as in the following examples:

```
Given on the
<date when="1977-06-12">Twelfth Day of June in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand
Nine Hundred and Seventy-seven of the Republic the Two Hundredth and first and of
the University the Eighty-Sixth.</date>
```

```
<l>specially when it's nine below zero</l>
<l>and <time when="15:00:00">three o'clock in the afternoon</time>
</l>
```

They are also useful in cases where the date concerned is uncertain or only vaguely specified:

```
<p>... <date period="secondEmpire">during the second empire</date>
</p>
```

```
<date notAfter="1946-12-09"
 notBefore="1946-11-01">in the weeks shortly before my
birth</date>
```

5.4 Numbers and measurements

Like dates, both numbers and quantities can be written with either letters or digits and may therefore need to be normalised for ease of processing. Their presentation is also highly language-dependent (e.g. English *5th* becomes Greek *5.*; English *123,456.78* equals French *123.456,78*).

The following elements are provided for the detailed encoding of numbers and quantities:

<num> (number) contains a number, written in any form.

- @*type* indicates the type of numeric value.
- @*value* supplies the value of the number in standard form.

<measure> contains a word or phrase referring to some quantity of an object or commodity, usually comprising a number, a unit, and a commodity name.

- @*quantity [att.measurement]* specifies the number of the specified units that comprise the measurement
- @*unit [att.measurement]* indicates the units used for the measurement, usually using the standard symbol for the desired units.
- @*commodity [att.measurement]* indicates the substance that is being measured

For example:

```
<num value="33">xxxiii</num>
<num type="cardinal" value="21">twenty-one</num>
<num type="percentage" value="10">ten percent</num>
<num type="percentage" value="10">10%</num>
<num type="ordinal" value="5">5th</num>
```

```
<measure quantity="40" unit="hogshead"
 commodity="rum">2 score hh rum</measure>
<measure quantity="1" unit="dozen"
 commodity="blooms">1 doz. roses</measure>
<measure quantity="1" unit="count"
 commodity="blooms">a yellow tulip</measure>
```

6 Lists

The element <list> is used to mark any kind of *list*. A list is a sequence of text items, which may be numbered, bulleted, or arranged as a glossary list. Each item may be preceded by an item label (in a glossary list, this label is the term being defined):

<list> contains any sequence of items organized as a list.

<item> contains one component of a list.

<label> contains any label or heading used to identify part of a text, typically but not exclusively in a list or glossary.

Individual list items are tagged with <item>. The first <item> may optionally be preceded by a <head>, which gives a heading for the list. The numbering of items within the list may be omitted, indicated using the *n* attribute on each item, or (rarely) tagged as content using the <label> element. The following are all thus equivalent:

```
<list>
 <head>A short list</head>
 <item>First item in list.</item>
 <item>Second item in list.</item>
 <item>Third item in list.</item>
</list>
<list>
 <head>A short list</head>
 <item n="1">First item in list.</item>
 <item n="2">Second item in list.</item>
 <item n="3">Third item in list.</item>
</list>
<list>
 <head>A short list</head>
 <label>1</label>
 <item>First item in list.</item>
 <label>2</label>
 <item>Second item in list.</item>
 <label>3</label>
 <item>Third item in list.</item>
</list>
```

The styles should not be mixed in the same list.

A simple two-column table may be treated as a *glossary list*, tagged <list type="gloss">. Here, each item comprises a *term* and a *gloss*, marked with <label> and <item> respectively. These correspond to the elements **<term>** and **<gloss>**, which can occur anywhere in prose text.

```
<list type="gloss">
 <head>Vocabulary</head>
 <label xml:lang="enm">nu</label>
 <item>now</item>
 <label xml:lang="enm">lhude</label>
 <item>loudly</item>
 <label xml:lang="enm">bloweth</label>
 <item>blooms</item>
 <label xml:lang="enm">med</label>
 <item>meadow</item>
 <label xml:lang="enm">wude</label>
 <item>wood</item>
 <label xml:lang="enm">awe</label>
 <item>ewe</item>
 <label xml:lang="enm">lhouth</label>
```

```
 <item>lows</item>
 <label xml:lang="enm">sterteth</label>
 <item>bounds, frisks</item>
 <label xml:lang="enm">verteth</label>
 <item xml:lang="la">pedit</item>
 <label xml:lang="enm">murie</label>
 <item>merrily</item>
 <label xml:lang="enm">swik</label>
 <item>cease</item>
 <label xml:lang="enm">naver</label>
 <item>never</item>
</list>
```

Where the internal structure of a list item is more complex, it may be preferable to regard the list as a *table*, for which special-purpose tagging is defined below (*8. Tables*).

Lists of whatever kind can, of course, nest within list items to any depth required. Here, for example, a glossary list contains two items, each of which is itself a simple list:

```
<list type="gloss">
 <label>EVIL</label>
 <item>
  <list type="simple">
   <item>I am cast upon a horrible desolate island, void of all hope of
       recovery.</item>
   <item>I am singled out and separated as it were from all the world to be
       miserable.</item>
   <item>I am divided from mankind – a solitaire; one banished from human
       society.</item>
  </list>
 </item>
 <label>GOOD</label>
 <item>
  <list type="simple">
   <item>But I am alive; and not drowned, as all my ship's company were.</item>
   <item>But I am singled out, too, from all the ship's crew, to be spared from
       death...</item>
   <item>But I am not starved, and perishing on a barren place, affording no
       sustenances....</item>
  </list>
 </item>
</list>
```

Lists of bibliographic items should be tagged using the <listBibl> element, described in the next section.

7 Bibliographic Citations

It is often useful to distinguish bibliographic citations where they occur within texts being transcribed for research, if only so that they will be properly formatted when the text is printed out. The element <bibl> is provided for this purpose. Where the components of a bibliographic reference are to be distinguished, the following elements may be used as appropriate. It is generally useful to distinguish at least those parts (such as the titles of articles, books, and journals) which will need special formatting. The other elements are provided for cases where particular interest attaches to such details.

<bibl> (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.

<author> in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority.

<biblScope> (scope of bibliographic reference) defines the scope of a bibliographic reference, for example as a list of page numbers, or a named subdivision of a larger work.

<date> contains a date in any format.

<editor> contains a secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc.

<publisher> provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item.

<pubPlace> (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published.

<relatedItem> contains or references some other bibliographic item which is related to the present one in some specified manner, for example as a constituent or alternative version of it.

<title> contains a title for any kind of work.

Consider, for example the following editorial note:

> He was a member of Parliament for Warwickshire in 1445, and died March 14, 1470 (according to Kittredge, *Harvard Studies* 5. 88ff).

This might be encoded as follows:

```
He was a member of Parliament for Warwickshire
in 1445, and died March 14, 1470 (according to <bibl>
 <author>Kittredge</author>,
<title>Harvard Studies</title> 5. 88ff
</bibl>).
```

The bibliographic elements listed above are particularly useful in a born digital document which contains a bibliography encoded using the <listBibl> element. Entries in the bibliography should be given an identifier, which can then be used as the target of cross references from elsewhere in the document:

```
<p>Perec citing, amongst others <ref target="#MK_73">Sturm und Drang, 1973</ref>,
concludes ... </p>
```

A <bibl> element may contain simply text, with possibly a few of its components distinguished by tagging, and much use of conventionalised punctuation, as in this example:

```
<bibl xml:id="MK_73">Sturm, U. & Drang, F. : <title>Musikalische
   Katastrophe</title>. (Berlin, W. de Gruyter, 1973)</bibl>
```

Alternatively, each of the components of the bibliographic reference may be clearly distinguished by tagging; in this case there is no requirement for conventionalised punctuation, since the processor will be able to generate this appropriately.

```
<bibl xml:id="MK73">
 <author>Sturm, U.</author>
 <author>Drang, F.</author>
 <title xml:lang="de" level="m">Musikalische Katastrophe </title>
 <pubPlace>Berlin</pubPlace>
 <publisher>W. de Gruyter</publisher>
 <date>1973</date>
</bibl>
```

The element <biblFull> is also provided for convience in cases where bibliographic citations following a more sophisticated model have been used; it is permitted only in the TEI Header.

<biblFull> (fully-structured bibliographic citation) contains a fully-structured bibliographic citation, in which all components of the TEI file description are present.

<listBibl> (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind.

The <listBibl> element is used to group lists of bibliographic citations. It may contain a series of <bibl> or <biblFull> elements.

8 Tables

The following elements are provided for the description of tabular matter, commonly found in many kinds of narrative text. Note that TEI Simple provides no sophisticated ways of describing the detailed layout of a table beyond its organization into rows and columns.

<table> contains text displayed in tabular form, in rows and columns.

<row> contains one row of a table.

<cell> contains one cell of a table.

The *role* attribute may be used on either <cell> or <row>to indicate the function of a cell, or of a row of cells. Its values should be taken from the following list:

data data cell

label label cell

sum row or column sum data

total table total data

For example, Defoe uses mortality tables like the following in the *Journal of the Plague Year* to show the rise and ebb of the epidemic:

```
<p>It was indeed coming on amain, for the
burials that same week were in the next adjoining parishes thus:—
<table rows="5" cols="4">
  <row role="data">
   <cell role="label">St. Leonard's, Shoreditch</cell>
   <cell>64</cell>
   <cell>84</cell>
   <cell>119</cell>
  </row>
  <row role="data">
   <cell role="label">St. Botolph's, Bishopsgate</cell>
   <cell>65</cell>
   <cell>105</cell>
   <cell>116</cell>
  </row>
  <row role="data">
   <cell role="label">St. Giles's, Cripplegate</cell>
```

```
    <cell>213</cell>
    <cell>421</cell>
    <cell>554</cell>
   </row>
  </table>
</p>
<p>This shutting up of houses was at first counted a very cruel and
unchristian method, and the poor people so confined made bitter lamentations. ...
</p>
```

9 Figures and Graphics

Not all the components of a document are necessarily textual. The most straightforward text will often contain diagrams or illustrations, to say nothing of documents in which image and text are inextricably intertwined, or electronic resources in which the two are complementary.

The encoder may simply record the presence of a graphic within the text, possibly with a brief description of its content, and may also provide a link to a digitized version of the graphic, using the following elements:

<graphic> indicates the location of a graphic or illustration, either forming part of a text, or providing an image of it.

<figure> groups elements representing or containing graphic information such as an illustration, formula, or figure.

<figDesc> (description of figure) contains a brief prose description of the appearance or content of a graphic figure, for use when documenting an image without displaying it.

Any textual information accompanying the graphic, such as a heading and/or caption, may be included within the <figure> element itself, in a <head> and one or more <p> elements, as also may any text appearing within the graphic itself. It is strongly recommended that a prose description of the image be supplied, as the content of a <figDesc> element, for the use of applications which are not able to render the graphic, and to render the document accessible to vision-impaired readers. (Such text is not normally considered part of the document proper.)

The simplest use for these elements is to mark the position of a graphic and provide a link to it, as in this example;

```
<pb n="412"/>
<figure>
 <graphic url="images/p412fig.png"/>
</figure>
<pb n="413"/>
```

This indicates that the graphic contained by the file p412fig.png appears between pages 412 and 413.

The <graphic> element can appear anywhere that textual content is permitted, within but not between paragraphs or headings. In the following example, the encoder has decided to treat a specific printer's ornament as a heading:

```
<head>
 <graphic url="http://www.iath.virginia.edu/gants/Ornaments/Heads/hp-ral02.gif"/>
</head>
```

More usually, a graphic will have at the least an identifying title, which may be encoded using the <head> element, or a number of figures may be grouped together in a particular structure, as in the following example: The <figure> element provides a means of wrapping one or more

Figure 3: *Mr Fezziwig's Ball*: illustration by George Cruikshank from Dickens' *A Christmas Carol* (1843)

such elements together as a kind of graphic 'block'. It may also include a brief description of the image.

```
<figure>
 <graphic url="images/fezzipic.png"/>
 <head>Mr Fezziwig's Ball</head>
 <figDesc>A Cruikshank engraving showing Mr Fezziwig leading a group of
   revellers.</figDesc>
</figure>
```

These cases should be carefully distinguished from the case where an encoded text is complemented by a collection of digital images, maintained as a distinct resource. The *facs* attribute may be used to associate any element in an encoded text with a digital facsimile of it. In the simplest case, the *facs* attribute on the <pb> element may be used to supply a location for an image file corresponding with that point in the text:

```
<text>
 <pb facs="page1.png" n="1"/>
<!-- text contained on page 1 is encoded here -->
 <pb facs="page2.png" n="2"/>
<!-- text contained on page 2 is encoded here -->
</text>
```

This method is only appropriate in the simple case where each digital image file `page1.png` etc. corresponds with a single transcribed and encoded page. If multiple images are provided for each page, or more detailed alignment of image and transcription is required, for example because the image files actually represent double page spreads, more sophisticated mechanisms are needed, as further discussed in *14. Encoding a digital facsimile* below.

10 Analysis

10.1 Orthographic Sentences

Interpretation typically ranges across the whole of a text, with no particular respect to other structural units. A useful preliminary to intensive interpretation is therefore to segment the text into discrete and identifiable units, each of which can then bear a label for use as a sort of 'canonical reference'. To facilitate such uses, these units may not cross each other, nor nest within each other. They may conveniently be represented using the following element:
<s> (s-unit) contains a sentence-like division of a text.

As the name suggests, the <s> element is most commonly used (in linguistic applications at least) for marking *orthographic sentences*, that is, units defined by orthographic features such

as punctuation. For example, the passage from *Jane Eyre* discussed earlier might be divided into s-units as follows:

```
<pb n="474"/>
<div type="chapter" n="38">
 <p>
  <s n="001">Reader, I married him.</s>
  <s n="002">A quiet wedding we had:</s>
  <s n="003">he and I, the parson and clerk, were alone present.</s>
  <s n="004">When
     we got back from church, I went into the kitchen of the manor-house, where
Mary
     was cooking the dinner, and John cleaning the knives, and I said —</s>
 </p>
 <p>
  <q>
   <s n="005">Mary, I have been married to Mr Rochester this morning.</s>
  </q> ...
 </p>
</div>
```

Note that <s> elements cannot nest: the beginning of one <s> element implies that the previous one has finished. When s-units are tagged as shown above, it is advisable to tag the entire text end-to-end, so that every word in the text being analysed will be contained by exactly one <s> element, whose identifier can then be used to specify a unique reference for it. If the identifiers used are unique within the document, then the *xml:id* attribute might be used in preference to the *n* attribute used in the above example.

10.2 Words and punctuation

Tokenization, that is, the identification of lexical or non-lexical tokens within a text, is a very common requirement for all kinds of textual analysis, and not an entirely trivial one. The decision as to whether, for example, 'can't' in English or 'du' in French should be treated as one word or two is not simple. Consequently it is often useful to make explicit the preferred tokenization in a marked up text. The following elements are available for this purpose:

<w> (word) represents a grammatical (not necessarily orthographic) word.

<c> (character) represents a character.

<pc> (punctuation character) contains a character or string of characters regarded as constituting a single punctuation mark.

For example, the output from a part of speech tagger might be recorded in TEI Simple as follows:

```
<s n="1">
 <w ana="#NP0">Marley</w>
 <w ana="#VBD">was</w>
 <w ana="#AJ0">dead</w>
 <pc>:</pc>
 <w ana="#TO0">to</w>
 <w ana="#VBB">begin</w>
 <w ana="#PRP">with</w>
 <pc ana="#SENT">.</pc>
</s>
```

In this example, each token in the input has been decorated with an automatically generated part of speech code, using the *ana* attribute discussed in section *3.7.3. Special Kinds of Linking* above. The system has also distinguished between tokens to be treated as words (tagged <w>)

and tokens considered to be punctuation (tagged <pc>). It may also sometimes be useful to distinguish tokens which consist of a single letter or character: the <c> element is provided for this purpose.

The <w> also provides for each word to be associated with a root form or lemma, either explicitly using the *lemma* attribute, or by reference, using the *lemmaRef* attribute, as in this example:

```
...<w ana="#VBD" lemma="be"
 lemmaRef="http://www.myLexicon.com/be">was</w> ...
```

10.3 General-Purpose Interpretation Elements

The <w> element is a specialisation of the <seg> element which has already been introduced for use in identifying otherwise unmarked targets of cross references and hypertext links (see section *3.7. Cross References and Links*); it can be used to distinguish any portion of text to which the encoder wishes to assign a user-specified *type* or a unique identifier; it may thus be used to tag textual features for which there is no other provision in the published TEI Guidelines.

For example, the Guidelines provide no 'apostrophe' element to mark parts of a literary text in which the narrator addresses the reader (or hearer) directly. One approach might be to regard these as instances of the <q> element, distinguished from others by an appropriate value for the *who* attribute. A possibly simpler, and certainly more general, solution would however be to use the <seg> element as follows:

```
<div type="chapter" n="38">
 <p>
  <seg type="apostrophe">Reader, I married him.</seg> A quiet wedding we had:
   ...</p>
</div>
```

The *type* attribute on the <seg> element can take any value, and so can be used to distinguish phrase-level phenomena of any kind; it is good practice to record the values used and their significance in the header or in the documentation of the encoding system.

11 Common attributes

Some attributes are available on many elements, though not on all. These attributes are defined using a TEI attribute class, a concept which is discussed further in the TEI Guidelines. We list here some attribute classes which have been adapted or customized for use in TEI Simple.

The elements <add>, <figure>, <fw>, <label>, <note> and <stage> all take the attribute *place* to indicate whereabouts on the page they appear. In TEI Simple the possible values for this attribute are limited as indicated below:

att.placement provides attributes for describing where on the source page or object a textual element appears.
@*place* specifies where this item is placed.

above above the line

below below the line

top at the top of the page

top-right at the top right of the page

top-left at the top left of the page

top-centre at the top center of the page

bottom-right at the bottom right of the page

bottom-left at the bottom left of the page

bottom-centre at the bottom centre of the page

bottom at the foot of the page

tablebottom underneath a table

margin-right in the right-hand margin

margin in the outer margin

margin-inner in the inner margin

margin-left in the left-hand margin

opposite on the opposite, i.e. facing, page.

overleaf on the other side of the leaf.

overstrike superimposed on top of the current context

end at the end of the volume.

divend at the end the current division.

parend at the end the current paragraph.

inline within the body of the text.

inspace in a predefined space, for example left by an earlier scribe.

block formatted as an indented paragraph

The elements <add>, <am>, <corr>, <date>, <del>, <ex>, <expan>, <gap>, <name>, <reg>, <space>, <subst>, <supplied>, <time> and <unclear> all use the attribute *unit* to indicate the units in which the size of the feature concerned is expressed. In TEI simple the possible values for this attribute are limited as indicated below:

att.dimensions provides attributes for describing the size of physical objects.

@*unit* names the unit used for the measurement

chars characters

lines lines

pages pages

words words

cm centimetres

mm millimetre

in inches

Very many TEI elements take the value *type* (see the specification for att.typed for a full list). In most cases, no constraint is placed on the possible values for this attribute. In the case of the element <name> however, the possible values for this attribute are limited as indicated below:

<name> (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase.

@*type* characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

person

forename

surname

personGenName

personRoleName

personAddName

nameLink

org

country

placeGeog

place

12 Composite and floating texts

A composite text, like a simple text, has an optional front and back. In between however, instead of a single body, it contains one or more discrete texts, each with its own optional front and back matter. The following elements are provided to handle composite texts of various kinds.

<group> contains the body of a composite text, grouping together a sequence of distinct texts (or groups of such texts) which are regarded as a unit for some purpose, for example the collected works of an author, a sequence of prose essays, etc.

<floatingText> contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, which interrupts the text containing it at any point and after which the surrounding text resumes.

<teiCorpus> contains the whole of a TEI encoded corpus, comprising a single corpus header and one or more TEI elements, each containing a single text header and a text.

A typical example might be an anthology containing several distinct works, or any other kind of collection, encoded using an overall structure like this:

```
<TEI xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
 <teiHeader>
<!--[ header information for the composite ]-->
 </teiHeader>
 <text>
  <front>
<!--[ front matter for the composite ]-->
  </front>
```

```
  <group>
   <text>
    <front>
<!--[ front matter of first text ]-->
    </front>
    <body>
<!--[ body of first text ]-->
    </body>
    <back>
<!--[ back matter of first text ]-->
    </back>
   </text>
   <text>
    <front>
<!--[ front matter of second text]-->
    </front>
    <body>
<!--[ body of second text ]-->
    </body>
    <back>
<!--[ back matter of second text ]-->
    </back>
   </text>
<!--[ more texts or groups of texts here ]-->
  </group>
  <back>
<!--[ back matter for the composite ]-->
  </back>
 </text>
</TEI>
```

A different kind of composite text occurs when one text is embedded within another, as for example in the *Arabian Nights* or similar collections of stories, or in other cases where one narrative is interrupted by another. The element <floatingText> may be preferred to encode such materials as the following:

```
<p>The Gentleman having finish'd his Story, Galecia waited on him to the Stairs-
head;
and at her return, casting her Eyes on the Table, she saw lying there an old dirty
rumpled Book, and found in it the following story: </p>
<floatingText>
 <body>
  <p> IN the time of the Holy War when Christians from all parts went into the Holy
      Land to oppose the Turks; Amongst these there was a certain English
Knight...</p>
<!-- rest of story here -->
  <p>The King graciously pardoned the Knight; Richard was kindly receiv'd into his
      Convent, and all things went on in good order: But from hence came the
Proverb, We
      must not strike <hi>Robert</hi> for <hi>Richard.</hi>
  </p>
 </body>
</floatingText>
<pb n="43"/>
<p>By this time Galecia's Maid brought up her Supper; after which she cast her Eyes
again on the foresaid little Book, where she found the following Story ....</p>
```

Note that there is only a single TEI Header for composite texts of either kind, since the assumption is that the composite is at some level describable as a single work. However, it is

also possible to define a composite of complete TEI texts, each with its own header. Such a collection is known as a *TEI corpus*, and must itself have a header:

```
<teiCorpus xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
 <teiHeader>
<!--[header information for the corpus]-->
 </teiHeader>
 <TEI>
  <teiHeader>
<!--[header information for first text]-->
  </teiHeader>
  <text>
<!--[first text in corpus]-->
  </text>
 </TEI>
 <TEI>
  <teiHeader>
<!--[header information for second text]-->
  </teiHeader>
  <text>
<!--[second text in corpus]-->
  </text>
 </TEI>
</teiCorpus>
```

It is also possible to create a composite of corpora – that is, one <teiCorpus> element may contain many nested <teiCorpus> elements rather than many nested <TEI> elements, to any depth considered necessary.

13 Front and Back Matter

13.1 Front Matter

For many purposes, particularly in older texts, the preliminary material such as title pages, prefatory epistles, etc., may provide very useful additional linguistic or social information.The TEI Guidelines provide a set of recommendations for distinguishing the textual elements most commonly encountered in front matter, which are summarized here.

13.1.1 Title Page

The start of a title page should be marked with the element <titlePage>. All text contained on the page should be transcribed and tagged with the appropriate element from the following list:

<titlePage> (title page) contains the title page of a text, appearing within the front or back matter.

<docTitle> (document title) contains the title of a document, including all its constituents, as given on a title page.

<titlePart> contains a subsection or division of the title of a work, as indicated on a title page.

<byline> contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work.

<docAuthor> (document author) contains the name of the author of the document, as given on the title page (often but not always contained in a byline).

<docDate> (document date) contains the date of a document, as given on a title page or in a dateline.

<docEdition> (document edition) contains an edition statement as presented on a title page of a document.

<docImprint> (document imprint) contains the imprint statement (place and date of publication, publisher name), as given (usually) at the foot of a title page.

<epigraph> contains a quotation, anonymous or attributed, appearing at the start or end of a section or on a title page.

Typeface distinctions should be marked with the *rendition* attribute when necessary, as described above though a very detailed description of the letter spacing and sizing used in ornamental titles is not easily done. Changes of language should be marked by appropriate use of the *xml:lang* attribute or the <foreign> element, as necessary. Names of people, places, or organizations, may be tagged using the <name> element wherever they appear if no other more specific element is available.

Two example title pages follow:

```
<titlePage>
 <docTitle>
  <titlePart type="main"> PARADISE REGAIN'D. A POEM In IV <hi>BOOKS</hi>.
</titlePart>
  <titlePart> To which is added <title>SAMSON AGONISTES</title>. </titlePart>
 </docTitle>
 <byline>The Author <docAuthor>JOHN MILTON</docAuthor>
 </byline>
 <docImprint>
  <name>LONDON</name>, Printed by <name>J.M.</name> for <name>John
     Starkey</name> at the <name>Mitre</name> in <name>Fleetstreet</name>, near
 <name>Temple-Bar.</name>
 </docImprint>
 <docDate>MDCLXXI</docDate>
</titlePage>
```

```
<titlePage>
 <docTitle>
  <titlePart type="main"> Lives of the Queens of England, from the Norman
     Conquest;</titlePart>
  <titlePart type="sub">with anecdotes of their courts. </titlePart>
 </docTitle>
 <titlePart>Now first published from Official Records and other authentic documents
   private as well as public.</titlePart>
 <docEdition>New edition, with corrections and additions</docEdition>
 <byline>By <docAuthor>Agnes Strickland</docAuthor>
 </byline>
 <epigraph>
  <q>The treasures of antiquity laid up in old historic rolls, I opened.</q>
  <bibl>BEAUMONT</bibl>
 </epigraph>
 <docImprint>Philadelphia: Blanchard and Lea</docImprint>
 <docDate>1860.</docDate>
</titlePage>
```

As elsewhere, the *ref* attribute may be used to link a name with a canonical definition of the entity being named. For example:

```
<byline>By <docAuthor>
  <name ref="http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Agnes_Strickland">Agnes Strickland</name>
 </docAuthor>
</byline>
```

13.1.2 Prefatory Matter

Major blocks of text within the front matter should be marked using elements; the following suggested values for the *type* attribute may be used to distinguish various common types of prefatory matter:

preface A foreword or preface addressed to the reader in which the author or publisher explains the content, purpose, or origin of the text

dedication A formal offering or dedication of a text to one or more persons or institutions by the author.

abstract A summary of the content of a text as continuous prose

ack A formal declaration of acknowledgment by the author in which persons and institutions are thanked for their part in the creation of a text

contents A table of contents, specifying the structure of a work and listing its constituents. The <list> element should be used to mark its structure.

frontispiece A pictorial frontispiece, possibly including some text.

Where other kinds of prefatory matter are encountered, the encoder is at liberty to invent other values for the *type* attribute.

13.1.3 Liminal elements

All text divisions, whether in front matter or elsewhere, may begin and end with one or more components which we term *liminal elements*, because they begin or end the division. A typical example is a heading or title of some kind which should be tagged using the <head> element; but there are many other possibilities:

<salute> (salutation) contains a salutation or greeting prefixed to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text, or the salutation in the closing of a letter, preface, etc.

<signed> (signature) contains the closing salutation, etc., appended to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text.

<byline> contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work.

<dateline> contains a brief description of the place, date, time, etc. of production of a letter, newspaper story, or other work, prefixed or suffixed to it as a kind of heading or trailer.

<argument> contains a formal list or prose description of the topics addressed by a subdivision of a text.

<cit> (cited quotation) contains a quotation from some other document, together with a bibliographic reference to its source. In a dictionary it may contain an example text with at least one occurrence of the word form, used in the sense being described, or a translation of the headword, or an example.

<imprimatur> contains a formal statement authorizing the publication of a work, sometimes required to appear on a title page or its verso.

<opener> groups together dateline, byline, salutation, and similar phrases appearing as a preliminary group at the start of a division, especially of a letter.

<closer> groups together salutations, datelines, and similar phrases appearing as a final group at the end of a division, especially of a letter.

<postscript> contains a postscript, e.g. to a letter.

As an example, the beginning and end of the dedication to Milton's *Comus* might be marked up as follows:

```
<div type="dedication">
 <head>To the Right Honourable <name>JOHN Lord Viscount BRACLY</name>, Son and Heir
   apparent to the Earl of Bridgewater, &c.</head>
 <salute>MY LORD,</salute>
 <p>THis <hi>Poem</hi>, which receiv'd its first occasion of Birth from your Self,
   and others of your Noble Family .... and as in this representation your
   attendant <name>Thyrsis</name>, so now in all reall expression</p>
 <closer>
  <salute>Your faithfull, and most humble servant</salute>
  <signed>
   <name>H. LAWES.</name>
  </signed>
 </closer>
</div>
```

13.2 Back Matter

13.2.1 Structural Divisions of Back Matter

Because of variations in publishing practice, back matter can contain virtually any of the elements listed above for front matter, and the same elements should be used where this is so. Additionally, back matter may contain the following types of matter within the <back> element. Like the structural divisions of the body, these should be marked as elements, and distinguished by the following suggested values of the *type* attribute:

appendix An ancillary self-contained section of a work, often providing additional but in some sense extra-canonical text.

glossary A list of terms associated with definition texts ('glosses'): this should be encoded as a <list type="gloss"> element

notes A section in which textual or other kinds of notes are gathered together.

bibliogr A list of bibliographic citations: this should be encoded as a <listBibl>

index Any form of pre-existing index to the work (An index may also be generated for a document by using the **<index>** element described above).

colophon A statement appearing at the end of a book describing the conditions of its physical production.

13.2.2 Specialised Front and Back Matter

TEI Simple also provides elements for some additional components of front or back matter which are characteristic of particular kinds of text, in particular old play texts. These often include lists of dramatis personae and notes about the setting of a play, for which the following elements are provided:

<castList> (cast list) contains a single cast list or dramatis personae.

<castItem> (cast list item) contains a single entry within a cast list, describing either a single role or a list of non-speaking roles.

<castGroup> (cast list grouping) groups one or more individual castItem elements within a cast list.

<role> contains the name of a dramatic role, as given in a cast list.

<roleDesc> (role description) describes a character's role in a drama.

<actor> contains the name of an actor appearing within a cast list.

<set> (setting) contains a description of the setting, time, locale, appearance, etc., of the action of a play, typically found in the front matter of a printed performance text (not a stage direction).

Note that these elements are intended for use in marking up cast lists and setting notes as they appear in a source document. They are not intended for use when marking up definitive lists of the different roles identified in a play, except in so far as that may have been their original purpose.

The following example shows one way of encoding the last part of Shakespeare's *Tempest*, as printed in the first folio:

```
<back>
 <div type="epilogue">
  <head>Epilogue, spoken by Prospero.</head>
  <sp>
   <l>Now my Charmes are all ore-throwne,</l>
   <l>And what strength I have's mine owne</l>
   <l>As you from crimes would pardon'd be,</l>
   <l>Let your Indulgence set me free.</l>
  </sp>
  <stage>Exit</stage>
 </div>
 <set>
  <p>The Scene, an un-inhabited Island.</p>
 </set>
 <castList>
  <head>Names of the Actors.</head>
  <castItem>Alonso, K. of Naples</castItem>
  <castItem>Sebastian, his Brother.</castItem>
  <castItem>Prospero, the right Duke of Millaine.</castItem>
<!-- etc -->
 </castList>
 <trailer>FINIS</trailer>
</back>
```

14 Encoding a digital facsimile

The following elements may be used to encode a text represented by a collection of digital images, either alone or in conjunction with a textual transcription.

<facsimile> contains a representation of some written source in the form of a set of images rather than as transcribed or encoded text.

<surface> defines a written surface as a two-dimensional coordinate space, optionally grouping one or more graphic representations of that space, zones of interest within that space, and transcriptions of the writing within them.

<zone> defines any two-dimensional area within a <surface> element.

As mentioned in section *9. Figures and Graphics* above, a TEI Simple document may reference a set of page images, alone, or in combination with a transcription. For ease of management, it is strongly recommended that the <graphic> elements representing those page images be grouped together within a <facsimile> element, as in the following example:

```
<facsimile>
 <graphic url="page1.png" xml:id="page1"/>
 <graphic url="page2.png" xml:id="page2"/>
</facsimile>
```

If a transcription is supplied in addition, the *xml:id* values can be used to align the page breaks within it with the relevant image, rather than using the URL given on the <graphic> element.

```
<text>
<!-- ...-->
 <pb facs="#page1"/>
<!-- text contained on page 1 -->
 <pb facs="#page2"/>
<!-- text contained on page 2 -->
<!-- ...-->
</text>
```

The <surface> element is useful in two situations: when it is desired to group different images of the same page, for example of different resolutions; and when it is desired to align parts of a page image with parts of a transcription. The <zone> element is used to define (and hence provide an identifier for) the location of a part of an image with reference to the surface on which it appears.

In this example, a thumbnail and a high resolution image are associated with the same surface:

```
<facsimile>
 <surface>
  <graphic xml:id="page1T"
   url="thumbs/page1.png"/>
  <graphic xml:id="page1" url="page1.png"/>
 </surface>
</facsimile>
```

In this example, the <head> element in the transcription is aligned with the top half of a square image:

```
<facsimile>
 <surface ulx="1" uly="1" lrx="4" lry="4">
  <graphic url="page1.png" xml:id="page1"/>
  <zone xml:id="topHalfP1" ulx="1" uly="1"
   lrx="2" lry="4"/>
 </surface>
</facsimile>
<text>
<!-- ... -->
 <pb facs="#page1"/>
 <head facs="#topHalfP1">Text of Heading</head>
<!-- ...-->
</text>
```

A more detailed explanation of the use of these attributes and other associated elements is given in the full Guidelines.

15 The Electronic Title Page

Every TEI text has a header which provides information analogous to that provided by the title page of printed text. The header is introduced by the element <teiHeader> and has four major parts:

<fileDesc> (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file.

<encodingDesc> (encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived.

<profileDesc> (text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting.

<revisionDesc> (revision description) summarizes the revision history for a file.

A corpus or collection of texts with many shared characteristics may have one header for the corpus and individual headers for each component of the corpus. In this case the *type* attribute indicates the type of header. <teiHeader type="corpus"> introduces the header for corpus-level information.

Some of the header elements contain running prose which consists of one or more <p>s. Others are grouped:

- Elements whose names end in *Stmt* (for statement) usually enclose a group of elements recording some structured information.
- Elements whose names end in *Decl* (for declaration) enclose information about specific encoding practices.
- Elements whose names end in *Desc* (for description) contain a prose description.

15.1 The File Description

The <fileDesc> element is mandatory. It contains a full bibliographic description of the file with the following elements:

<titleStmt> (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its content.

<editionStmt> (edition statement) groups information relating to one edition of a text.

<extent> describes the approximate size of a text stored on some carrier medium or of some other object, digital or non-digital, specified in any convenient units.

<publicationStmt> (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text.

<seriesStmt> (series statement) groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs.

<notesStmt> (notes statement) collects together any notes providing information about a text additional to that recorded in other parts of the bibliographic description.

<sourceDesc> (source description) describes the source from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as "born digital" for a text which has no previous existence.

A minimal header has the following structure:

```
<teiHeader>
 <fileDesc>
  <titleStmt>
<!-- bibliographic description of the digital resource -->
  </titleStmt>
  <publicationStmt>
<!-- information about how the resource is distributed -->
  </publicationStmt>
  <sourceDesc>
<!-- information about the sources from which the digital resource is derived -->
  </sourceDesc>
 </fileDesc>
</teiHeader>
```

15.1.1 The Title Statement

The following elements can be used in the <titleStmt>:

<title> contains a title for any kind of work.

<author> in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority.

<sponsor> specifies the name of a sponsoring organization or institution.

<funder> (funding body) specifies the name of an individual, institution, or organization responsible for the funding of a project or text.

<principal> (principal researcher) supplies the name of the principal researcher responsible for the creation of an electronic text.

<respStmt> (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of a bibliographic work.

The title of a digital resource derived from a non-digital original may be similar to that of its source but should be distinct from it, for example:

```
[title of source]: a machine readable transcription
```

or

```
[title of source]: TEI XML edition
```

or

```
A machine readable version of: [title of source]
```

Several specialised elements may be used to indicate specific responsibilities for the content of the work, such as <author>, <editor>, <principal>, <funder>, etc. The generic <respStmt> element is provided for other statements of responsibility. It contains the following subcomponents:

<resp> (responsibility) contains a phrase describing the nature of a person's intellectual responsibility, or an organization's role in the production or distribution of a work.

<name> (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase.

Example:

```
<titleStmt>
 <title>Two stories by Edgar Allen Poe encoded using TEI Simple </title>
 <author>Poe, Edgar Allen (1809-1849)</author>
 <respStmt>
  <resp>compiled by</resp>
  <name>James D. Benson</name>
 </respStmt>
</titleStmt>
```

15.1.2 The Edition Statement

The <editionStmt> groups information relating to one edition of the digital resource (where *edition* is used as elsewhere in bibliography), and may include the following elements:

<edition> describes the particularities of one edition of a text.

<respStmt> (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of a bibliographic work.

Example:

```
<editionStmt>
 <edition n="U2">Third draft, substantially revised <date>1987</date>
 </edition>
</editionStmt>
```

Determining exactly what constitutes a new edition of an electronic text is left to the encoder.

15.1.3 The Extent Statement

The <extent> statement describes the approximate size of the digital resource.

Example:

```
<extent>15 Mb
</extent>
```

15.1.4 The Publication Statement

The <publicationStmt> is mandatory. It may contain a simple prose description or groups of the elements described below:

<publisher> provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item.

<distributor> supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for the distribution of a text.

<authority> (release authority) supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for making a work available, other than a publisher or distributor.

At least one of these three elements must be present, unless the entire publication statement is in prose. The following elements may occur within them:

<pubPlace> (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published.

<address> contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual.

<addrLine> (address line) contains one line of a postal address.

<idno> (identifier) supplies any form of identifier used to identify some object, such as a bibliographic item, a person, a title, an organization, etc. in a standardized way.

<availability> supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, any licence applying to it, etc.

<licence> contains information about a licence or other legal agreement applicable to the text.

<date> contains a date in any format.

Example:

```
<publicationStmt>
 <publisher>University of Victoria Humanities Computing and Media
   Centre</publisher>
 <pubPlace>Victoria, BC</pubPlace>
 <date>2011</date>
 <availability status="restricted">
  <licence target="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/"> Distributed
     under a Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 3.0 Unported License
  </licence>
 </availability>
</publicationStmt>
```

15.1.5 Series and Notes Statements

The <seriesStmt> element groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs. It may contain <title>, <idno>, or <respStmt> elements.

The <notesStmt>, if used, contains one or more <note> elements which contain a note or annotation. Some information found in the notes area in conventional bibliography has been assigned specific elements in the TEI scheme.

15.1.6 The Source Description

The <sourceDesc> is a mandatory element which records details of the source or sources from which the computer file is derived. It may contain simple prose or a bibliographic citation, using one or more of the following elements:

<bibl> (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.

<listBibl> (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind.

Examples:

```
<sourceDesc>
 <bibl>The first folio of Shakespeare, prepared by Charlton Hinman (The Norton
   Facsimile, 1968)</bibl>
</sourceDesc>
```

```
<sourceDesc>
 <bibl>
  <author>CNN Network News</author>
  <title>News headlines</title>
  <date>12 Jun 1989</date>
 </bibl>
</sourceDesc>
```

15.2 The Encoding Description

The <encodingDesc> element specifies the methods and editorial principles which governed the transcription of the text. Its use is highly recommended. It may be prose description or may contain more specialised elements chosen from the following list:

<projectDesc> (project description) describes in detail the aim or purpose for which an electronic file was encoded, together with any other relevant information concerning the process by which it was assembled or collected.

<samplingDecl> (sampling declaration) contains a prose description of the rationale and methods used in sampling texts in the creation of a corpus or collection.

<editorialDecl> (editorial practice declaration) provides details of editorial principles and practices applied during the encoding of a text.

<tagsDecl> (tagging declaration) provides detailed information about the tagging applied to a document.

<refsDecl> (references declaration) specifies how canonical references are constructed for this text.

<listPrefixDef> (list of prefix definitions) contains a list of definitions of prefixing schemes used in data.pointer values, showing how abbreviated URIs using each scheme may be expanded into full URIs.

<prefixDef> (prefixing scheme used in data.pointer values) defines a prefixing scheme used in data.pointer values, showing how abbreviated URIs using the scheme may be expanded into full URIs.

<classDecl> (classification declarations) contains one or more taxonomies defining any classificatory codes used elsewhere in the text.

15.2.1 Project and Sampling Descriptions

Examples of <projectDesc> and **<samplingDesc>**:

```
<encodingDesc>
 <projectDesc>
  <p>Texts collected for use in the Claremont Shakespeare Clinic, June 1990. </p>
 </projectDesc>
</encodingDesc>
```

```
<encodingDesc>
 <samplingDecl>
  <p>Samples of 2000 words taken from the beginning of the text</p>
 </samplingDecl>
</encodingDesc>
```

15.2.2 Editorial Declarations

The <editorialDecl> contains a prose description of the practices used when encoding the text. Typically this description should cover such topics as the following, each of which may conveniently be given as a separate paragraph.

correction how and under what circumstances corrections have been made in the text.

normalization the extent to which the original source has been regularized or normalized.

quotation what has been done with quotation marks in the original – have they been retained or replaced by entity references, are opening and closing quotes distinguished, etc.

hyphenation what has been done with hyphens (especially end-of-line hyphens) in the original – have they been retained, replaced by entity references, etc.

segmentation how has the text has been segmented, for example into sentences, tone-units, graphemic strata, etc.

interpretation what analytic or interpretive information has been added to the text.

Example:

```
<editorialDecl>
 <p>The part
   of speech analysis applied throughout section 4 was added by hand and has not
   been checked.</p>
 <p>Errors in transcription controlled by using the WordPerfect
   spelling checker.</p>
 <p>All words converted to Modern American spelling using
   Webster's 9th Collegiate dictionary.</p>
</editorialDecl>
```

The full TEI Guidelines provide specialised elements for each of the topics above; these are not however included in TEI Simple.

15.2.3 Tagging Declaration

When it does not consist simply of a prose description, the <tagsDecl> element may contain a number of more specialised elements providing additional information about how the document concerned has been marked up. The following elements may be used

<rendition> supplies information about the rendition or appearance of one or more elements in the source text.

<namespace> supplies the formal name of the namespace to which the elements documented by its children belong.

<tagUsage> documents the usage of a specific element within a specified document.

Here is a simple example, showing how these elements may be used. It indicates the number of times the elements <hi> and <title> from the TEI name space have been used in the document. It also documents how the way that the source document was originally printed has been represented using TEI tagging:

```
<tagsDecl partial="true">
 <rendition xml:id="rend-bo">font-weight:bold</rendition>
 <rendition xml:id="rend-it"
  selector="hi, title">font-style:italic</rendition>
 <namespace name="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <tagUsage gi="hi" occurs="467"/>
  <tagUsage gi="title" occurs="45"/>
 </namespace>
</tagsDecl>
```

The <rendition> elements here contain fragments expressed in the W3C standard Cascading Stylesheets language (CSS). Their function here is to associate the particular styles concerned with an identifier (for example rend-bo) which can then be pointed to from elsewhere within the document by means of the *rendition* attribute mentioned in section *3.5.1. Changes of Typeface, etc.* above. To indicate, for example, that a particular name in the document was rendered in a bold font it might be tagged <name rendition="#rend-bo">. The *selector* attribute used in the preceding example is used to indicate once for all a default rendition value to be associated with several elements: in this example, unless otherwise indicated, it is assumed that the content of each <hi> and each <title> element was originally rendered using an italic font.

For TEI Simple, a large set of such rendition definitions has been predefined. The encoder is not therefore required to supply any detailed declarations, but can refer to the predefined list using the following list:

simple:allcaps all capitals

simple:blackletter black letter or gothic typeface

simple:bold bold typeface

simple:bottombraced marked with a brace under the bottom of the text

simple:boxed border around the text

simple:centre centred

simple:cursive cursive typeface

simple:display block display

simple:doublestrikethrough strikethrough with double line

simple:doubleunderline underlined with double line

simple:dropcap initial letter larger or decorated

simple:float floated out of main flow

simple:hyphen with a hyphen here (eg in line break)

simple:inline inline rendering

simple:justify justified text

simple:italic italic typeface

simple:larger larger type

simple:left aligned to the left or left-justified

simple:leftbraced marked with a brace on the left side of the text

simple:letterspace larger-than-normal spacing between letters, usually for emphasis

simple:literal fixed-width typeface, spacing preserved

simple:normalstyle upright shape and default weight of typeface

simple:normalweight normal typeface weight

simple:right aligned to the right or right-justified

simple:rightbraced marked with a brace to the right of the text

simple:rotateleft rotated to the left

simple:rotateright rotated to the right

simple:smallcaps small caps

simple:smaller smaller type

simple:strikethrough strike through

simple:subscript subscript

simple:superscript superscript

simple:topbraced marked with a brace above the text

simple:typewriter fixed-width typeface, like typewriter

simple:underline underlined with single line

simple:wavyunderline underlined with wavy line

The `simple:` prefix used here must be mapped to a location at which the full rendition declaration can be found, by default the XML source of the present document.

Full details of the way these elements may be used are provided in the relevant section of the TEI Guidelines (`http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD57`)

15.2.4 Reference, Prefix, and Classification Declarations

The <refsDecl> element is used to document the way in which any standard referencing scheme built into the encoding works. In its simplest form, it consists of prose description.

Example:

```
<refsDecl>
 <p>The
 <att>n</att> attribute on each <gi>div</gi> contains the canonical reference
   for each division in the form XX.yyy where XX is the book number in roman
   numeral and yyy is the section number in arabic.</p>
 <p>Milestone tags refer to
   the edition of 1830 as E30 and that of 1850 as E50. </p>
</refsDecl>
```

The <listPrefixDef> element contains one or more <prefixDef> elements, each defining a prefix which has been used to abbreviate references to other documents, for example as the value of a *target* or other pointing attribute. The definition provides information about how the prefix can be translated automatically into a full URL, as in the following example:

```
<listPrefixDef>
 <prefixDef ident="psn"
  matchPattern="([A-Z]+)"
  replacementPattern="http://www.example.com/personography.xml#$1"/>
</listPrefixDef>
```

In this case, a pointer value in the form `psn:MDH` would be translated to `http://www.example.com/personography.xml#MDH`.

The <classDecl> element groups together definitions or sources for any descriptive classification schemes or *taxonomies* used by other parts of the header. These schemes may be defined in a number of different ways, using one or more of the following elements:

<taxonomy> defines a typology either implicitly, by means of a bibliographic citation, or explicitly by a structured taxonomy.

<bibl> (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.

<category> contains an individual descriptive category, possibly nested within a superordinate category, within a user-defined taxonomy.

<catDesc> (category description) describes some category within a taxonomy or text typology, either in the form of a brief prose description or in terms of the situational parameters used by the TEI formal textDesc.

In the simplest case, the taxonomy may be defined by a bibliographic reference, as in the following example:

```
<classDecl>
 <taxonomy xml:id="LC-SH">
  <bibl>Library of Congress Subject Headings
  </bibl>
 </taxonomy>
</classDecl>
```

Alternatively, or in addition, the encoder may define a special purpose classification scheme, as in the following example:

```
<taxonomy xml:id="B">
 <bibl>Brown
   Corpus</bibl>
 <category xml:id="B.A">
  <catDesc>Press Reportage</catDesc>
  <category xml:id="B.A1">
   <catDesc>Daily</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="B.A2">
   <catDesc>Sunday</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="B.A3">
   <catDesc>National</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="B.A4">
   <catDesc>Provincial</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="B.A5">
   <catDesc>Political</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="B.A6">
   <catDesc>Sports</catDesc>
  </category>
 </category>
 <category xml:id="B.D">
  <catDesc>Religion</catDesc>
  <category xml:id="B.D1">
   <catDesc>Books</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="B.D2">
   <catDesc>Periodicals and tracts</catDesc>
  </category>
 </category>
</taxonomy>
```

Linkage between a particular text and a category within such a taxonomy is made by means of the <catRef> element within the <textClass> element, as described in the next section.

15.3 The Profile Description

The <profileDesc> element gathers together information about various descriptive aspects of a text. It has the following optional components:

<creation> contains information about the creation of a text.

<abstract> contains a summary or formal abstract prefixed to an existing source document by the encoder.

<particDesc> (participation description) describes the identifiable speakers, voices, or other participants in any kind of text or other persons named or otherwise referred to in a text, edition, or metadata.

<settingDesc> (setting description) describes the setting or settings within which a language interaction takes place, or other places otherwise referred to in a text, edition, or metadata.

<langUsage> (language usage) describes the languages, sublanguages, registers, dialects, etc. represented within a text.

<textClass> (text classification) groups information which describes the nature or topic of a text in terms of a standard classification scheme, thesaurus, etc.

The <creation> element documents where a work was created, even though it may not have been published or recorded there.

Example:

```
<creation>
 <date when="1992-08">August 1992</date>
 <name type="place">Taos, New
   Mexico</name>
</creation>
```

The <abstract> element may be used to provide a brief summary or abstract of the document concerned: it is most usually applied to texts born digital:

```
<profileDesc>
 <abstract>
  <p>This paper is a draft studying various aspects of using the TEI as a reference
     serialization framework for LMF. Comments are welcome to bring this to a
useful
     document for the community. </p>
 </abstract>
</profileDesc>
```

The <particDesc> element is used to list descriptive information about the real or fictional participants in a text, for example the characters in a novel or a play. It contains at least one <listPerson> element, which contains individual <person> elements

<listPerson> (list of persons) contains a list of descriptions, each of which provides information about an identifiable person or a group of people, for example the participants in a language interaction, or the people referred to in a historical source.

<person> provides information about an identifiable individual, for example a participant in a language interaction, or a person referred to in a historical source.

For example:

```
<profileDesc>
 <particDesc>
  <listPerson>
   <person xml:id="OPI">
    <p>
     <name>Dr Opimian</name> : named for the famous Roman
         fine wine.</p>
   </person>
   <person xml:id="GRM">
    <p>
     <name>Mr Gryll</name> : named for the mythical Gryllus,
         one of Ulysses' sailors transformed by Circe into a pig, who argues that
he
         was happier in that state than as a man.</p>
   </person>
```

```
  </listPerson>
 </particDesc>
</profileDesc>
```

In the same way, the <settingDesc> element can be used to list descriptive information about the real or fictional places mentioned in a text. It contains at least one <listPlace> element, which contains individual <place> elements.

<listPlace> (list of places) contains a list of places, optionally followed by a list of relationships (other than containment) defined amongst them.

<place> contains data about a geographic location

For example:

```
<profileDesc>
 <settingDesc>
  <listPlace>
   <head>Houses mentioned in <title>Pride and Prejudice</title>
   </head>
   <place xml:id="NETF1">
    <p>
     <name>Netherfield Park</name> : home of the
         Bingleys</p>
   </place>
   <place xml:id="PEMB1">
    <p>
     <name>Pemberley</name> : home of Mr Darcy</p>
   </place>
  </listPlace>
 </settingDesc>
</profileDesc>
```

The full Guidelines provide a rich range of additional elements to define more structured information about persons and places; these are not however available in TEI Simple.

The <langUsage> element is useful where a text contains many different languages. It may contain <language> elements to document each particular language used:

<language> characterizes a single language or sublanguage used within a text.

For example, a text containing predominantly text in French as spoken in Quebec, but also smaller amounts of British and Canadian English might be documented as follows:

```
<langUsage>
 <language ident="fr-CA" usage="60">Québecois</language>
 <language ident="en-CA" usage="20">Canadian business English</language>
 <language ident="en-GB" usage="20">British English</language>
</langUsage>
```

The <textClass> element classifies a text. This may be done with reference to a classification system locally defined by means of the <classDecl> element, or by reference to some externally defined established scheme such as the Universal Decimal Classification. Texts may also be classified using lists of keywords, which may themselves be drawn from locally or externally defined control lists. The following elements are used to supply such classifications:

<classCode> (classification code) contains the classification code used for this text in some standard classification system.

<catRef> (category reference) specifies one or more defined categories within some taxonomy or text typology.

<keywords> contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text.

The simplest way of classifying a text is by means of the <classCode> element. For example, a text with classification 410 in the Universal Decimal Classification might be documented as follows:

```
<classCode scheme="http://www.udc.org">410</classCode>
```

When a classification scheme has been locally defined using the <taxonomy> element discussed in the preceding subsection, the <catRef> element should be used to reference it. To continue the earlier example, a work classified in the Brown Corpus as `Press reportage - Sunday` and also as `Religion` might be documented as follows:

```
<catRef target="#B.A3 #B.D"/>
```

The element <keywords> contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text. As usual, the attribute *scheme* identifies the source from which these terms are taken. For example, if the LC Subject Headings are used, following declaration of that classification system in a <taxonomy> element as above :

```
<textClass>
 <keywords scheme="#LCSH">
  <list>
   <item>English literature -- History and criticism -- Data processing.</item>
   <item>English literature -- History and criticism -- Theory etc.</item>
   <item>English language -- Style -- Data processing.</item>
  </list>
 </keywords>
</textClass>
```

Multiple classifications may be supplied using any of the mechanisms described in this section.

15.4 Other forms of metadata

The TEI Header was one of the first attempts to provide a full range of metadata elements, but it is by no means the only standard now used for this purpose. To facilitate the management of large digital collections and to simplify interoperability of TEI and non-TEI resources, the following element may be found useful:

<xenoData> (outside metadata) provides a container element into which metadata in non-TEI formats may be placed.

A typical use for this element might be to store a set of descriptors conforming to the Dublin Core standard in the Header rather than to generate them automatically from the corresponding TEI elements. For examples and discussion, see the TEI Guidelines at `http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD9`

15.5 The Revision Description

The <revisionDesc> element provides a change log in which each significant change made to a text may be recorded. It is always the last element in a <teiHeader> and contains the following elements:

<change> documents a change or set of changes made during the production of a source document, or during the revision of an electronic file.

<listChange> groups a number of change descriptions associated with either the creation of a source text or the revision of an encoded text.

Each <change> element contains a brief description of a significant change. The attributes *when* and *who* may be used to identify when the change was carried out and the person responsible for it.

It is good practice (but not required) to group changes together within a <listChange> element.

Example:

```
<revisionDesc>
 <listChange>
  <change when="1991-11-11" who="#LB"> deleted chapter 10 </change>
  <change when="1991-11-02" who="#MSM"> completed first draft </change>
 </listChange>
</revisionDesc>
```

In a production environment it will usually be found preferable to use some kind of automated system to track and record changes. Many such *version control systems*, as they are known, can also be configured to update the TEI Header of a file automatically.

16 The Simple Processing Model

Unlike most other TEI customizations, TEI Simple includes documentation of the intended processing associated with the majority of elements. As noted above, the TEI provides components such as the *rendition* attribute to indicate the appearance of particular parts of a document in the non-digital source from which it is derived. With TEI Simple, it is also possible to indicate how in general an element should be processed, in particular its intended appearance when processed for display on a screen or on paper. This ability derives from a number of capabilities recently added to the TEI architecture for the specification of processing, which were developed as part of the project that defined the TEI Simple schema.

The key feature of this 'processing model' is a notation that allows the encoder to associate each element with one or more categories, which we call its *behaviour*s. In addition, the processing model indicates how the element should be rendered, possibly differently in differing circumstances, using the W3C Cascading Stylesheets Standard (CSS) mentioned above. It is consequently much easier to develop processors for documents conforming to TEI Simple, since the complexity of the task is much reduced.

Twenty-five different behaviours are currently defined by the TEI processing model. Their names indicate informally the categorisation concerned, and should be readily comprehensible for most programmers. The following table indicates the TEI Simple elements associated with each.

Behavi	Used by	Effect
alternate	choice date	support display of alternative visualisations, for example by displaying the preferred content, by displaying both in parallel, or by toggling between the two.
anchor	anchor	create an identifiable anchor point in the output.

block	address addrLine argument back body byline closer dateline div docTitle epigraph figure floatingText formula front fw group head imprimatur l lg listBibl note opener postscript q quote role roleDesc salute signed sp speaker spGrp stage titlePage titlePart trailer	create a block structure
body	text	create the body of a document
break	cb lb pb	create a line, column, or page break according to the value of `type`
cell	cell	create a table cell
cit	cit	show the content, with an indication of the source
document	TEI	start a new output document
glyph	g	show a character by looking up reference to a chardesc at the given URI
graphic	graphic	if `url` is present, use it to display graphic, else display a placeholder image.
heading	head	creates a heading.
index	body	generate list according to type.
inline	abbr actor add am author bibl biblScope c choice code corr date del desc docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint editor email ex expan figDesc figure foreign formula fw g gap handShift hi label measure milestone name note num orig pc q quote ref reg relatedItem rhyme rs s salute seg sic signed subst supplied time title unclear w	creates inline element out of content if there's something in `<outputRendition>`, use that formatting; otherwise just show text of selected content.:
link	ref	create hyperlink.
list	castGroup castList list listBibl	create a list.
listItem	bibl castItem item	create a list item.
metadata	teiHeader	create metadata section.
note	note	create a note, often out of line, depending on the value of place; could be margin, footnote, endnote, inline.
omit	author editor publisher pubPlace profileDesc revisionDesc encodingDesc	*do nothing, do not process children:*
paragraph	ab p	create a paragraph out of content.
row	row	create a table row:
section	div	create a new section of the output document
table	table	create a table
text	title	create literal text
title	fileDesc	create document title

Full documentation of the processing model is provided in section http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TD.html#TDPM of the TEI Guidelines, and we do not describe it further here.

17 The TEI Simple schema

17.1 Schema teisimple: Added components

17.2 Schema teisimple: changed components

<TEI> (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, combining a single TEI header with one or more members of the model.resourceLike class. Multiple TEI elements may be combined to form a <teiCorpus> element. [4. Default Text Structure 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

@version specifies the major version number of the TEI Guidelines against which this document is valid.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.version

Note The major version number is historically prefixed by a P (for Proposal), and is distinct from the version number used for individual releases of the Guidelines, as used by (for example) the *source* of the <schemaSpec> element. The current version is P5.

Contained by teiCorpus

May contain

header: teiHeader

textstructure: text

transcr: facsimile

Note This element is required. It is customary to specify the TEI namespace http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0 on it, using the *xmlns* attribute.

Example

```
<TEI version="5.0" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
 <teiHeader>
  <fileDesc>
   <titleStmt>
    <title>The shortest TEI Document Imaginable</title>
   </titleStmt>
   <publicationStmt>
    <p>First published as part of TEI P2, this is the P5
         version using a name space.</p>
   </publicationStmt>
   <sourceDesc>
    <p>No source: this is an original work.</p>
   </sourceDesc>
  </fileDesc>
 </teiHeader>
```

```
 <text>
  <body>
   <p>This is about the shortest TEI document imaginable.</p>
  </body>
 </text>
</TEI>
```

Example

```
<TEI version="5.0" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
 <teiHeader>
  <fileDesc>
   <titleStmt>
    <title>A TEI Document containing four page images </title>
   </titleStmt>
   <publicationStmt>
    <p>Unpublished demonstration file.</p>
   </publicationStmt>
   <sourceDesc>
    <p>No source: this is an original work.</p>
   </sourceDesc>
  </fileDesc>
 </teiHeader>
 <facsimile>
  <graphic url="page1.png"/>
  <graphic url="page2.png"/>
  <graphic url="page3.png"/>
  <graphic url="page4.png"/>
 </facsimile>
</TEI>
```

Schematron <s:ns prefix=”tei” uri=”http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0”/> <s:ns prefix=”xs” uri=”http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema”/>

Schematron <s:ns prefix=”rng” uri=”http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0”/>

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <elementRef key="teiHeader"/>
  <classRef key="model.resourceLike"
   minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element TEI
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   attribute version { text }?,
   ( teiHeader, model.resourceLike+ )
}
```

<ab> (anonymous block) contains any arbitrary component-level unit of text, acting as an anonymous container for phrase or inter level elements analogous to, but without the semantic baggage of, a paragraph. [16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors]

Module linking

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.fragmentable (*@part*) att.written (*@hand*)

Member of model.pLike

Contained by

core: item note q quote sp stage

corpus: particDesc settingDesc

drama: castList set

figures: cell figure

header: abstract availability change editionStmt editorialDecl encodingDesc handNote langUsage licence prefixDef projectDesc publicationStmt refsDecl samplingDecl seriesStmt sourceDesc

namesdates: person place

textstructure: argument back body div epigraph front postscript

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Note The <ab> element may be used at the encoder's discretion to mark any component-level elements in a text for which no other more specific appropriate markup is defined.

Example

```
<div type="book" n="Genesis">
 <div type="chapter" n="1">
  <ab>In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth.</ab>
  <ab>And the earth was without form, and void; and
     darkness was upon the face of the deep. And the
     spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters.</ab>
  <ab>And God said, Let there be light: and there was light.</ab>
<!-- ...-->
 </div>
</div>
```

Schematron <s:report test="(ancestor::tei:p or ancestor::tei:ab) and not(parent::tei:exemplum |parent::tei:item |parent::tei:note |parent::tei:q |parent::tei:quote |parent::tei:remarks |parent::tei:said |parent::tei:sp

|parent::tei:stage |parent::tei:cell |parent::tei:figure)"> Abstract model violation: ab may not contain paragraphs or other ab elements. </s:report>

Schematron <s:report test="ancestor::tei:l or ancestor::tei:lg"> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain higher-level divisions such as p or ab. </s:report>

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element ab
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.fragmentable.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   macro.paraContent}
```

<abbr> (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort. [3.5.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.source (*@source*) att.typed (~~type~~, @subtype)

`@type` allows the encoder to classify the abbreviation according to some convenient typology.

Derived from att.typed

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Sample values include: **suspension** the abbreviation provides the first letter(s) of the word or phrase, omitting the remainder.

contraction the abbreviation omits some letter(s) in the middle.

brevigraph the abbreviation comprises a special symbol or mark.

superscription the abbreviation includes writing above the line.

acronym the abbreviation comprises the initial letters of the words of a phrase.

title the abbreviation is for a title of address (Dr, Ms, Mr, …)

organization the abbreviation is for the name of an organization.

geographic the abbreviation is for a geographic name.

Note The *type* attribute is provided for the sake of those who wish to classify abbreviations at their point of occurrence; this may be useful in some circumstances, though usually the same abbreviation will have the same type in all occurrences. As the sample values make clear, abbreviations may be classified by the method used to construct them, the method of writing them, or the referent of the term abbreviated; the typology used is up to the encoder and

should be carefully planned to meet the needs of the expected use.
For a typology of Middle English abbreviations, see PETTY

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.editorial

Contained by

analysis: pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder handNote language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb ref reg rs sic time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Note The <abbr> tag is not required; if appropriate, the encoder may transcribe abbreviations in the source text silently, without tagging them. If abbreviations are not transcribed directly but *expanded* silently, then the TEI header should so indicate.

Example

```
<choice>
 <expan>North Atlantic Treaty Organization</expan>
 <abbr cert="low">NorATO</abbr>
 <abbr cert="high">NATO</abbr>
 <abbr cert="high" xml:lang="fr">OTAN</abbr>
</choice>
```

Example

```
<choice>
 <abbr>SPQR</abbr>
 <expan>senatus populusque romanorum</expan>
</choice>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
```

```
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element abbr
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.source.attributes,
   att.typed.attribute.subtype,
   attribute type { text }?,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

<actor> contains the name of an actor appearing within a cast list. [7.1.4. Cast Lists]

Module drama

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

Member of model.castItemPart

Contained by

drama: castItem

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb ref reg rs sic time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Note This element should be used only to mark the name of the actor as given in the source. Chapter 13. Names, Dates, People, and Places discusses ways of marking the components of names, and also of associating names with biographical information about a person.

Example

```
<castItem>
 <role>Mathias</role>
 <roleDesc>the Burgomaster</roleDesc>
 <actor>Mr. Henry Irving</actor>
</castItem>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element actor { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

<add> (addition) contains letters, words, or phrases inserted in the source text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector. [3.4.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.transcriptional (*@status*, *@cause*, *@seq*) (att.editLike (att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*)) (att.source (*@source*))) (att.written (*@hand*)) att.placement (*@place*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: am fw subst supplied zone

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Note In a diplomatic edition attempting to represent an original source, the <add> element should not be used for additions to the current TEI electronic edition made by editors or encoders. In these cases, either the <corr> or <supplied> element are

recommended.In a TEI edition of a historical text with previous editorial emendations in which such additions or reconstructions are considered part of the source text, the use of <add> may be appropriate, dependent on the editorial philosophy of the project.

Example

```
The story I am
going to relate is true as to its main facts, and as to the
consequences <add place="above">of these facts</add> from which
this tale takes its title.
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element add
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.transcriptional.attributes,
   att.placement.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   macro.paraContent}
```

<addrLine>

<addrLine> (address line) contains one line of a postal address. [3.5.2. Addresses 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

Member of model.addrPart

Contained by

core: address

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb ref reg rs sic time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Note Addresses may be encoded either as a sequence of lines, or using any sequence of component elements from the model.addrPart class. Other non-postal forms of address, such as telephone numbers or email, should not be included within an <address> element directly but may be wrapped within an <addrLine> if they form part of the printed address in some source text.

Example

```
<address>
 <addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135</addrLine>
 <addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine>
 <addrLine>Chicago, IL</addrLine>
 <addrLine>60680 USA</addrLine>
</address>
```

Example

```
<addrLine>
 <ref target="tel:+1-201-555-0123">(201) 555 0123</ref>
</addrLine>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element addrLine { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

<address> contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual. [3.5.2. Addresses 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

Member of model.addressLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail

Contained by

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder handNote language licence principal publicationStmt rendition sponsor tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: addrLine cb gap lb milestone name note pb rs

figures: figure

header: idno

linking: anchor

transcr: fw

Note This element should be used for postal addresses only. Within it, the generic element <addrLine> may be used as an alternative to any of the more specialized elements available from the model.addrPart class, such as `<street>`, `<postCode>` etc.

Example

```
<address>
 <street>via Marsala 24</street>
 <postCode>40126</postCode>
 <name>Bologna</name>
 <name n="I">Italy</name>
</address>
```

Example

```
<address>
 <addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135</addrLine>
 <addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine>
 <addrLine>Chicago, IL 60680</addrLine>
 <addrLine>USA</addrLine>
</address>
```

Example

```
<address>
 <country key="FR"/>
 <settlement type="city">Lyon</settlement>
 <postCode>69002</postCode>
 <district type="arrondissement">IIème</district>
 <district type="quartier">Perrache</district>
 <street>
  <num>30</num>, Cours de Verdun</street>
</address>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.global"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.addrPart"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element address
{
   att.global.attributes,
   ( model.global*, ( model.addrPart, model.global* )+ )
}
```

<am>

<am> (abbreviation marker) contains a sequence of letters or signs present in an abbreviation which are omitted or replaced in the expanded form of the abbreviation. [11.3.1.2. Abbreviation and Expansion]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.editLike (att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*)) (att.source (*@source*))

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.editorial

Contained by

analysis: pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder handNote language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: add corr del orig reg sic unclear

gaiji: g

transcr: supplied

Example

```
 do you <abbr>Mr<am>.</am>
</abbr> Jones?
```

Example

```
<expan>
 <abbr>Aug<am>g</am>
 </abbr>
 <ex>ustorum duo</ex>
</expan>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.pPart.transcriptional"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element am
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.editLike.attributes,
   ( text | model.gLike | model.pPart.transcriptional )*
}
```

<anchor> (anchor point) attaches an identifier to a point within a text, whether or not it corresponds with a textual element. [8.4.2. Synchronization and Overlap 16.4. Correspondence and Alignment]

Module linking

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic sp speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castGroup castItem castList role roleDesc set

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder handNote language licence principal sponsor

linking: ab seg

namesdates: person

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: fw subst supplied surface zone

verse: rhyme

May contain Empty element

Note On this element, the global *xml:id* attribute must be supplied to specify an identifier for the point at which this element occurs within a document. The value used may

be chosen freely provided that it is unique within the document and is a syntactically valid name. There is no requirement for values containing numbers to be in sequence.

Example

```
<s>The anchor is he<anchor xml:id="A234"/>re somewhere.</s>
<s>Help me find it.<ptr target="#A234"/>
</s>
```

Content model <content/>

Schema Declaration

```
element anchor { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, empty }
```

<argument> contains a formal list or prose description of the topics addressed by a subdivision of a text. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions 4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

core: lg list

drama: castList

figures: figure table

textstructure: back body div front group opener titlePage

May contain

core: bibl cb cit gap head l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote sp stage

drama: castList

figures: figure table

header: biblFull

linking: ab anchor

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw

Note Often contains either a list or a paragraph

Example

```
<argument>
 <p>Monte Video — Maldonado — Excursion
   to R Polanco — Lazo and Bolas — Partridges —
   Absence of Trees — Deer — Capybara, or River Hog —
   Tucutuco — Molothrus, cuckoo-like habits — Tyrant
   Flycatcher — Mocking-bird — Carrion Hawks —
   Tubes formed by Lightning — House struck</p>
</argument>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
```

```
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
   <classRef key="model.headLike"/>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.common"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element argument
{
   att.global.attributes,
   ( ( model.global | model.headLike )*, ( model.common, model.global* )+ )
}
```

---

att.canonical provides attributes which can be used to associate a representation such as a name or title with canonical information about the object being named or referenced.

Module tei

Members att.naming[att.personal[name] author editor pubPlace rs] docAuthor docTitle funder principal resp respStmt sponsor title

Attributes Attributes

`@ref` (reference) provides an explicit means of locating a full definition or identity for the entity being named by means of one or more URIs.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

```
<name ref="http://viaf.org/viaf/109557338"
 type="person">Seamus Heaney</name>
```

Note The value must point directly to one or more XML elements or other resources by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied the implication is that the name identifies several distinct entities.

---

att.dimensions provides attributes for describing the size of physical objects.

Module tei

Members att.editLike[att.transcriptional[add del subst] am corr date ex expan gap name person place reg supplied time unclear]

Attributes Attributes

`@unit` names the unit used for the measurement

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: **chars** characters

lines lines

pages pages
words words
cm centimetres
mm millimetre
in inches

`@quantity` specifies the length in the units specified
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.numeric

`@extent` indicates the size of the object concerned using a project-specific vocabulary combining quantity and units in a single string of words.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.text

```
<gap extent="5 words"/>
<height extent="half the page"/>
```

`@scope` where the measurement summarizes more than one observation, specifies the applicability of this measurement.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.enumerated
Sample values include: **all** measurement applies to all instances.
most measurement applies to most of the instances inspected.
range measurement applies to only the specified range of instances.

---

att.editLike provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind.

Module tei

Members att.transcriptional[add del subst] am corr date ex expan gap name person place reg supplied time unclear

Attributes Attributes att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*) att.source (*@source*)

---

att.global.linking provides a set of attributes for hypertextual linking.

Module linking

Members att.global[TEI ab abbr abstract actor add addrLine address am anchor argument author authority availability back bibl biblFull biblScope body byline c castGroup castItem castList catDesc catRef category cb cell change char charDecl charName charProp choice cit classCode classDecl closer code corr creation date dateline del desc distributor div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl email encodingDesc epigraph ex expan extent facsimile figDesc figure fileDesc floatingText foreign formula front funder fw g gap glyph glyphName graphic group handNote head hi idno imprimatur item keywords l label langUsage language lb lg licence list listBibl listChange listPerson listPlace listPrefixDef localName mapping measure milestone name namespace note notesStmt num opener orig p particDesc pb pc person place postscript prefixDef principal profileDesc projectDesc pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q quote ref refsDecl reg relatedItem rendition resp respStmt revisionDesc rhyme role roleDesc row rs s salute samplingDecl seg seriesStmt set settingDesc sic signed sourceDesc sp

speaker sponsor stage subst supplied surface table tagUsage tagsDecl taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader text textClass time title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer unclear unicodeName value w xenoData zone]

Attributes Attributes

@corresp (corresponds) points to elements that correspond to the current element in some way.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

```
<group>
 <text xml:id="t1-g1-t1"
  xml:lang="mi">
  <body xml:id="t1-g1-t1-body1">
   <div type="chapter">
    <head>He Whakamaramatanga mo te Ture Hoko, Riihi hoki,
i nga Whenua Maori, 1876.</head>
    <p>…</p>
   </div>
  </body>
 </text>
 <text xml:id="t1-g1-t2"
  xml:lang="en">
  <body xml:id="t1-g1-t2-body1"
   corresp="#t1-g1-t1-body1">
   <div type="chapter">
    <head>An Act to regulate the Sale, Letting, and
Disposal of Native Lands, 1876.</head>
    <p>…</p>
   </div>
  </body>
 </text>
</group>In this example a <group> contains two <text>s, each
containing the same document in a different language. The
correspondence is indicated using corresp. The language is
indicated using xml:lang, whose value is inherited; both the
tag with the corresp and the tag pointed to by the corresp
inherit the value from their immediate parent.

<!-- In a placeography --><place xml:id="LOND1"
 corresp="#LOND2 #GENI1">
 <placeName>London</placeName>
 <desc>The city of London...</desc>
</place>
<!-- In a literary personography -->
<person xml:id="LOND2"
 corresp="#LOND1 #GENI1">
 <persName type="lit">London</persName>
 <note>
  <p>Allegorical character representing the city of
<ref target="LOND1.xml">London</ref>.
  </p>
 </note>
</person>
<person xml:id="GENI1"
 corresp="#LOND1 #LOND2">
 <persName type="lit">London's Genius</persName>
 <note>
  <p>Personification of London's genius. Appears as an
     allegorical character in mayoral shows.
  </p>
 </note>
</person>In this example, a <place> element containing
```

```
information about the city of London is linked with two
<person> elements in a literary personography. This
correspondence represents a slightly looser relationship
than the one in the preceding example; there is no sense in
which an allegorical character could be substituted for the
physical city, or vice versa, but there is obviously a
correspondence between them.
```

@next points to the next element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.pointer

@prev (previous) points to the previous element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.pointer

---

att.global.rendition provides rendering attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme.

Module tei

Members att.global[TEI ab abbr abstract actor add addrLine address am anchor argument author authority availability back bibl biblFull biblScope body byline c castGroup castItem castList catDesc catRef category cb cell change char charDecl charName charProp choice cit classCode classDecl closer code corr creation date dateline del desc distributor div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl email encodingDesc epigraph ex expan extent facsimile figDesc figure fileDesc floatingText foreign formula front funder fw g gap glyph glyphName graphic group handNote head hi idno imprimatur item keywords l label langUsage language lb lg licence list listBibl listChange listPerson listPlace listPrefixDef localName mapping measure milestone name namespace note notesStmt num opener orig p particDesc pb pc person place postscript prefixDef principal profileDesc projectDesc pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q quote ref refsDecl reg relatedItem rendition resp respStmt revisionDesc rhyme role roleDesc row rs s salute samplingDecl seg seriesStmt set settingDesc sic signed sourceDesc sp speaker sponsor stage subst supplied surface table tagUsage tagsDecl taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader text textClass time title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer unclear unicodeName value w xenoData zone]

Attributes Attributes

@rendition points to a description of the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text.
Status Optional
Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace
Suggested values include: **simple:allcaps** all capitals
simple:blackletter black letter or gothic typeface
simple:bold bold typeface
simple:bottombraced marked with a brace under the bottom of the text
simple:boxed border around the text
simple:centre centred
simple:cursive cursive typeface

simple:display block display
simple:doublestrikethrough strikethrough with double line
simple:doubleunderline underlined with double line
simple:dropcap initial letter larger or decorated
simple:float floated out of main flow
simple:hyphen with a hyphen here (eg in line break)
simple:inline inline rendering
simple:justify justified text
simple:italic italic typeface
simple:larger larger type
simple:left aligned to the left or left-justified
simple:leftbraced marked with a brace on the left side of the text
simple:letterspace larger-than-normal spacing between letters, usually for emphasis
simple:literal fixed-width typeface, spacing preserved
simple:normalstyle upright shape and default weight of typeface
simple:normalweight normal typeface weight
simple:right aligned to the right or right-justified
simple:rightbraced marked with a brace to the right of the text
simple:rotateleft rotated to the left
simple:rotateright rotated to the right
simple:smallcaps small caps
simple:smaller smaller type
simple:strikethrough strike through
simple:subscript subscript
simple:superscript superscript
simple:topbraced marked with a brace above the text
simple:typewriter fixed-width typeface, like typewriter
simple:underline underlined with single line
simple:wavyunderline underlined with wavy line

```
<head rendition="#ac #sc">
 <lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse <lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle, <lb/>On
Her
<lb/>
 <hi rendition="#normal">New Blazing-World</hi>.
</head>
<!-- elsewhere... -->
<rendition xml:id="sc"
 scheme="css">font-variant: small-caps</rendition>
<rendition xml:id="normal"
 scheme="css">font-variant: normal</rendition>
<rendition xml:id="ac"
 scheme="css">text-align: center</rendition>
```

Note The *rendition* attribute is used in a very similar way to the *class* attribute defined for XHTML but with the important distinction that its function is to describe the appearance of the source text, not necessarily to determine how that text should be presented on screen or paper.Where both *rendition* and *rend* are supplied, the latter is understood to override or complement the former.
Each URI provided should indicate a <rendition> element

defining the intended rendition in terms of some appropriate style language, as indicated by the *scheme* attribute.

Schematron <s:rule context="tei:*[@rendition]"> <s:let name="results" value="for $val in tokenize(normalize-space(@rendition),'\s+') return starts-with($val,'simple:') or (starts-with($val,'#') and //tei:rendition[@xml:id=substring($val,2)])"/> <s:assert test="every $x in $results satisfies $x"> Error: Each of the rendition values in "<s:value-of select="@rendition"/>" must point to a local ID or to a token in the Simple scheme (<s:value-of select="$results"/>)</s:assert> </s:rule>

Schematron <s:rule context="tei:*[@corresp]"> <s:let name="results" value="for $t in tokenize(normalize-space(@corresp),'\s+') return starts-with($t,'#') and not(id(substring($t,2)))"/> <s:report test="some $x in $results satisfies $x"> Error: Every local pointer in "<s:value-of select="@corresp"/>" must point to an ID in this document (<s:value-of select="$results"/>)</s:report> </s:rule>

---

att.placement provides attributes for describing where on the source page or object a textual element appears.

Module tei

Members add figure fw label note stage

Attributes Attributes

@place specifies where this item is placed.

Status Recommended

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace

Legal values are: **above** above the line

below below the line

top at the top of the page

top-right at the top right of the page

top-left at the top left of the page

top-centre at the top center of the page

bottom-right at the bottom right of the page

bottom-left at the bottom left of the page

bottom-centre at the bottom centre of the page

bottom at the foot of the page

tablebottom underneath a table

margin-right in the right-hand margin

margin in the outer margin

margin-inner in the inner margin

margin-left in the left-hand margin

opposite on the opposite, i.e. facing, page.

overleaf on the other side of the leaf.

overstrike superimposed on top of the current context

end at the end of the volume.

divend at the end the current division.

parend at the end the current paragraph.

inline within the body of the text.

inspace in a predefined space, for example left by an earlier scribe.

block formatted as an indented paragraph

```
<add place="margin">[An addition written in the
margin]</add>
<add place="bottom opposite">[An addition written at the
foot of the current page and also on the facing page]</add>
<note place="bottom">Ibid, p.7</note>
```

---

att.pointing provides a set of attributes used by all elements which point to other elements by means of one or more URI references.

Module tei

Members catRef licence note ref

Attributes Attributes

@targetLang specifies the language of the content to be found at the destination referenced by *target*, using a 'language tag' generated according to BCP 47.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.language

Schematron

<sch:rule context="tei:*[not(self::tei:schemaSpec)][@targetLang]"> <sch:assert test="@target">@targetLang should only be used on <sch:name/> if @target is specified.</sch:assert> </sch:rule>

```
<linkGrp xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1-linkGrp">
 <ptr xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1.1-ptr"
  target="pol/UDHR/text.xml#pol_txt_1-head"
  type="tuv"
  targetLang="pl"/>
 <ptr xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1.2-ptr"
  target="swh/UDHR/text.xml#swh_txt_1-head"
  type="tuv"
  targetLang="sw"/>
</linkGrp>In the example above, the <linkGrp> combines
pointers at parallel fragments of the Universal Declaration
of Human Rights: one of them is in Polish, the other in
Swahili.
```

Note The value must conform to BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a <language> element with a matching value for its *ident* attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their (IETF) Internet Engineering Task Force definitions.

@target specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI References

Status Optional

Schematron <s:rule context="tei:*[@target]"> <s:let name="results" value="for $t in tokenize(normalize-space(@target),'\s+') return starts-with($t,'#') and not(id(substring($t,2)))"/> <s:report test="some $x in $results satisfies $x"> Error: Every local pointer in "<s:value-of select="@target"/>" must point to an ID in this document (<s:value-of select="$results"/>)</s:report> </s:rule>

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Note One or more syntactically valid URI references, separated by

whitespace. Because whitespace is used to separate URIs, no whitespace is permitted inside a single URI. If a whitespace character is required in a URI, it should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g. `TEI%20Consortium`.

`@evaluate` specifies the intended meaning when the target of a pointer is itself a pointer.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: **all** if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then the target of that pointer will be taken, and so on, until an element is found which is not a pointer.

one if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then its target (whether a pointer or not) is taken as the target of this pointer.

none no further evaluation of targets is carried out beyond that needed to find the element specified in the pointer's target.

Note If no value is given, the application program is responsible for deciding (possibly on the basis of user input) how far to trace a chain of pointers.

<author>

<author> in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority. [3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.naming (*@role*, *@nymRef*) (att.canonical (*@ref*))

Member of model.respLike

Contained by

core: bibl

header: editionStmt titleStmt

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb ref reg rs sic time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Note Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use a generally recognized name authority file to supply the content for this element. The attributes *key* or *ref* may also be used to reference canonical

information about the author(s) intended from any appropriate authority, such as a library catalogue or online resource.In the case of a broadcast, use this element for the name of the company or network responsible for making the broadcast.
Where an author is unknown or unspecified, this element may contain text such as *Unknown* or *Anonymous*. When the appropriate TEI modules are in use, it may also contain detailed tagging of the names used for people, organizations or places, in particular where multiple names are given.

Example

```
<author>British Broadcasting Corporation</author>
<author>La Fayette, Marie Madeleine Pioche de la Vergne, comtesse de
(1634–1693)</author>
<author>Anonymous</author>
<author>Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation</author>
<author>
 <persName>Beaumont, Francis</persName> and
<persName>John Fletcher</persName>
</author>
<author>
 <orgName key="BBC">British Broadcasting
   Corporation</orgName>: Radio 3 Network
</author>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element author
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.naming.attributes,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

<back> (back matter) contains any appendixes, etc. following the main part of a text. [4.7. Back Matter 4. Default Text Structure]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

Contained by

textstructure: floatingText text

transcr: facsimile

May contain

core: cb gap head lb list milestone note p pb

drama: castList set

figures: figure table

linking: ab anchor

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

textstructure: argument byline closer div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph postscript signed titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: fw

Note Because cultural conventions differ as to which elements are grouped as back matter and which as front matter, the content models for the <back> and <front> elements are identical.

Example

```
<back>
 <div1 type="appendix">
  <head>The Golden Dream or, the Ingenuous Confession</head>
  <p>To shew the Depravity of human Nature </p>
 </div1>
 <div1 type="epistle">
  <head>A letter from the Printer, which he desires may be inserted</head>
  <salute>Sir.</salute>
  <p>I have done with your Copy, so you may return it to the Vatican, if
you please </p>
 </div1>
 <div1 type="advert">
  <head>The Books usually read by the Scholars of Mrs Two-Shoes are these
and are sold at Mr
      Newbery's at the Bible and Sun in St Paul's Church-yard.</head>
  <list>
   <item n="1">The Christmas Box, Price 1d.</item>
   <item n="2">The History of Giles Gingerbread, 1d.</item>
   <item n="42">A Curious Collection of Travels, selected from the Writers
of all Nations,
        10 Vol, Pr. bound 1l.</item>
  </list>
 </div1>
 <div1 type="advert">
  <head>
   <hi rend="center">By the KING's Royal Patent,</hi> Are sold by J.
NEWBERY, at the
      Bible and Sun in St. Paul's Church-Yard.</head>
  <list>
   <item n="1">Dr. James's Powders for Fevers, the Small-Pox, Measles,
Colds, &c.
        2s. 6d</item>
   <item n="2">Dr. Hooper's Female Pills, 1s.</item>
  </list>
 </div1>
</back>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
   <classRef key="model.pLike.front"/>
   <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.listLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
   <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
```

```
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
     <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
     <classRef key="model.global"/>
    </alternate>
   </sequence>
   <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
     <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
     <classRef key="model.global"/>
    </alternate>
   </sequence>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
   <classRef key="model.divBottomPart"/>
   <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.divBottomPart"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
   </alternate>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element back
{
   att.global.attributes,
   (
      (
         model.frontPart       | model.pLike.front       | model.pLike       | model.list
      (
         (
            model.div1Like,
            ( model.frontPart | model.div1Like | model.global )*
         )
       | ( model.divLike, ( model.frontPart | model.divLike | model.global )* )
      )?,
      ( model.divBottomPart, ( model.divBottomPart | model.global )* )?
   )
}
```

<bibl> (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged. [3.11.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References 2.2.7. The Source Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.sortable (*@sortKey*) att.docStatus (*@status*)

Member of model.biblLike model.biblPart

Contained by

core: add bibl cit corr del desc head hi item l listBibl note orig p q quote ref reg relatedItem sic stage title unclear

drama: castList set

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence rendition sourceDesc tagUsage taxonomy

linking: ab seg

namesdates: person place

textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address author bibl biblScope cb choice corr date del editor email expan foreign gap hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb pubPlace publisher ref reg relatedItem respStmt rs sic time title unclear

figures: figure

gaiji: g

header: availability distributor edition extent funder idno principal sponsor

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

Note Contains phrase-level elements, together with any combination of elements from the *biblPart* class

Example

```
<bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to Literature in
English (Yale,
1990)</bibl>
```

Example

```
<bibl>
 <title level="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the
Wood</title>. In
<author>Victor E Neuberg</author>, <title>The Penny Histories</title>.
<publisher>OUP</publisher>
 <date>1968</date>.
</bibl>
```

Example

```
<bibl type="article" subtype="book_chapter"
 xml:id="carlin_2003">
 <author>
  <name>
   <surname>Carlin</surname>
     (<forename>Claire</forename>)</name>
 </author>,
<title level="a">The Staging of Impotence : France's last
   congrès</title> dans
```

```
<bibl type="monogr">
  <title level="m">Theatrum mundi : studies in honor of Ronald W.
     Tobin</title>, éd.
 <editor>
   <name>
    <forename>Claire</forename>
    <surname>Carlin</surname>
   </name>
  </editor> et
 <editor>
   <name>
    <forename>Kathleen</forename>
    <surname>Wine</surname>
   </name>
  </editor>,
 <pubPlace>Charlottesville, Va.</pubPlace>,
 <publisher>Rookwood Press</publisher>,
 <date when="2003">2003</date>.
 </bibl>
</bibl>
```

Schematron <s:assert test=”child::* or child::text()[normalize-space()]” role=”ERROR”> Element ”<s:name/>” may not be empty. </s:assert>

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.highlighted"/>
  <classRef key="model.pPart.data"/>
  <classRef key="model.pPart.edit"/>
  <classRef key="model.segLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.biblPart"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element bibl
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.sortable.attributes,
   att.docStatus.attributes,
   (
      text
    | model.gLike    | model.highlighted    | model.pPart.data    | model.pPart.edit    |
}
```

<biblScope> (scope of bibliographic reference) defines the scope of a bibliographic reference, for example as a list of page numbers, or a named subdivision of a larger work. [3.11.2.5. Scopes and Ranges in Bibliographic Citations]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.citing (*@unit*, *@from*, *@to*)

Member of model.imprintPart

Contained by

core: bibl

header: seriesStmt

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb ref reg rs sic time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Note When a single page is being cited, use the *from* and *to* attributes with an identical value. When no clear endpoint is provided, the *from* attribute should be used without *to*. For example, if the citation has 'p. 3ff' as a page reference.

Example

```
<biblScope>pp 12–34</biblScope>
<biblScope unit="page" from="12" to="34"/>
<biblScope unit="volume">II</biblScope>
<biblScope unit="page">12</biblScope>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element biblScope
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.citing.attributes,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

<body>

<body> (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter. [4. Default Text Structure]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

Contained by

textstructure: floatingText text

May contain

core: bibl cb cit gap head l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote sp stage

drama: castList

figures: figure table

header: biblFull

linking: ab anchor

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate epigraph floatingText opener postscript salute signed trailer

transcr: fw

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.global"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
   <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
   <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
    <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
   </alternate>
  </sequence>
  <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
   <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
   <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
    <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
   </alternate>
  </sequence>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <sequence minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <classRef key="model.global"/>
     <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
    </alternate>
   </sequence>
   <sequence minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <classRef key="model.global"/>
     <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
    </alternate>
   </sequence>
   <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <sequence minOccurs="1"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <classRef key="model.common"/>
     <classRef key="model.global"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
```

```
    </sequence>
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
     <sequence minOccurs="1"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
      <alternate minOccurs="0"
       maxOccurs="unbounded">
       <classRef key="model.global"/>
       <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
      </alternate>
     </sequence>
     <sequence minOccurs="1"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
      <alternate minOccurs="0"
       maxOccurs="unbounded">
       <classRef key="model.global"/>
       <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
      </alternate>
     </sequence>
    </alternate>
   </sequence>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element body
{
   att.global.attributes,
   (
      model.global*,
      ( model.divTop, ( model.global | model.divTop )* )?,
      ( model.divGenLike, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )?,
      (
         ( model.divLike, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+
       | ( model.div1Like, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+
       | (
            ( model.common, model.global* )+,
            (
               ( model.divLike, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+
             | ( model.div1Like, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+
            )?
         )
      ),
      ( model.divBottom, model.global* )*
   )
}
```

<byline> contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers 4.5. Front Matter]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

core: lg list

drama: castList

figures: figure table

textstructure: back body div front group opener titlePage

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb ref reg rs sic time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

textstructure: docAuthor

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Note The byline on a title page may include either the name or a description for the document's author. Where the name is included, it may optionally be tagged using the <docAuthor> element.

Example

```
<byline>Written by a CITIZEN who continued all the
while in London. Never made publick before.</byline>
```

Example

```
<byline>Written from her own MEMORANDUMS</byline>
```

Example

```
<byline>By George Jones, Political Editor, in Washington</byline>
```

Example

```
<byline>BY
<docAuthor>THOMAS PHILIPOTT,</docAuthor>
Master of Arts,
(Somtimes)
Of Clare-Hall in Cambridge.</byline>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
```

```
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <elementRef key="docAuthor"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element byline
{
   att.global.attributes,
   ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | docAuthor | model.global )*
}
```

<c> (character) represents a character. [17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories]

Module analysis

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.segLike (*@function*) (att.fragmentable (*@part*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of model.segLike

Contained by

analysis: pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied zone

verse: rhyme

May contain

gaiji: g

Note Contains a single character, a <g> element, or a sequence of graphemes to be treated as a single character. The *type* attribute is used to indicate the function of this segmentation, taking values such as letter, punctuation, or digit etc.

Example

```
<phr>
 <c>M</c>
 <c>O</c>
 <c>A</c>
 <c>I</c>
 <w>doth</w>
```

```
 <w>sway</w>
 <w>my</w>
 <w>life</w>
</phr>
```

Content model `<content> <macroRef key="macro.xtext"/></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element c
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.segLike.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   macro.xtext}
```

<castGroup> (cast list grouping) groups one or more individual castItem elements within a cast list. [7.1.4. Cast Lists]

Module drama

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

Contained by

drama: castGroup castList

May contain

core: cb gap head lb milestone note pb

drama: castGroup castItem roleDesc

figures: figure

linking: anchor

textstructure: trailer

transcr: fw

Note The *rend* attribute may be used, as here, to indicate whether the grouping is indicated by a brace, whitespace, font change, etc.Note that in this example the role description 'friends of Mathias' is understood to apply to both roles equally.

Example

```
<castGroup rend="braced">
 <castItem>
  <role>Walter</role>
  <actor>Mr Frank Hall</actor>
 </castItem>
 <castItem>
  <role>Hans</role>
  <actor>Mr F.W. Irish</actor>
 </castItem>
 <roleDesc>friends of Mathias</roleDesc>
</castGroup>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
```

```
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
   <classRef key="model.headLike"/>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <elementRef key="castItem"/>
    <elementRef key="castGroup"/>
    <elementRef key="roleDesc"/>
   </alternate>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
  <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="trailer"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element castGroup
{
   att.global.attributes,
   (
      ( model.global | model.headLike )*,
      ( ( castItem | castGroup | roleDesc ), model.global* )+,
      ( trailer, model.global* )?
   )
}
```

<castItem> (cast list item) contains a single entry within a cast list, describing either a single role or a list of non-speaking roles. [7.1.4. Cast Lists]

Module drama

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

`@type` characterizes the cast item.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: **role** the item describes a single role.[Default]

list the item describes a list of non-speaking roles.

Contained by drama: castGroup castList

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb ref reg rs sic time title unclear

drama: actor role roleDesc

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Example

```
<castItem>
 <role>Player</role>
 <actor>Mr Milward</actor>
</castItem>
```

Example

```
<castItem type="list">Constables, Drawer, Turnkey, etc.</castItem>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.castItemPart"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element castItem
{
   att.global.attributes,
   attribute type { "role" | "list" }?,
   ( text | model.gLike | model.castItemPart | model.phrase | model.global )*
}
```

<castList> (cast list) contains a single cast list or dramatis personae. [7.1.4. Cast Lists 7.1. Front and Back Matter]

Module drama

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

Member of model.frontPart.drama model.inter

Contained by

core: add corr del desc head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg sic stage title unclear

drama: castList set

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence rendition tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument back body div docEdition epigraph front imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: bibl cb cit gap head l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote sp stage

drama: castGroup castItem castList

figures: figure table

header: biblFull

linking: ab anchor

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

textstructure: argument byline dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph floatingText opener salute signed

transcr: fw

Example

```
<castList>
 <castGroup>
  <head rend="braced">Mendicants</head>
  <castItem>
   <role>Aafaa</role>
   <actor>Femi Johnson</actor>
  </castItem>
  <castItem>
   <role>Blindman</role>
   <actor>Femi Osofisan</actor>
  </castItem>
  <castItem>
   <role>Goyi</role>
   <actor>Wale Ogunyemi</actor>
  </castItem>
  <castItem>
   <role>Cripple</role>
   <actor>Tunji Oyelana</actor>
  </castItem>
 </castGroup>
 <castItem>
  <role>Si Bero</role>
  <roleDesc>Sister to Dr Bero</roleDesc>
  <actor>Deolo Adedoyin</actor>
 </castItem>
 <castGroup>
  <head rend="braced">Two old women</head>
  <castItem>
   <role>Iya Agba</role>
   <actor>Nguba Agolia</actor>
  </castItem>
  <castItem>
   <role>Iya Mate</role>
   <actor>Bopo George</actor>
  </castItem>
 </castGroup>
 <castItem>
```

```
    <role>Dr Bero</role>
    <roleDesc>Specialist</roleDesc>
    <actor>Nat Okoro</actor>
   </castItem>
   <castItem>
    <role>Priest</role>
    <actor>Gbenga Sonuga</actor>
   </castItem>
   <castItem>
    <role>The old man</role>
    <roleDesc>Bero's father</roleDesc>
    <actor>Dapo Adelugba</actor>
   </castItem>
  </castList>
  <stage type="mix">The action takes place in and around the home surgery of
  Dr Bero, lately returned from the wars.</stage>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.common"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
  <sequence minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <elementRef key="castItem"/>
    <elementRef key="castGroup"/>
   </alternate>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
  <sequence minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.common"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element castList
{
   att.global.attributes,
   (
      ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
      ( model.common, model.global* )*,
      ( ( castItem | castGroup ), model.global* )+,
      ( model.common, model.global* )*
```

```
    )
}
```

<cb>

<cb> (column break) marks the beginning of a new column of a text on a multi-column page. [3.10.3. Milestone Elements]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.edition (*@ed*, *@edRef*) att.spanning (*@spanTo*) att.breaking (*@break*)

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic sp speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castGroup castItem castList role roleDesc set

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder handNote language licence principal sponsor

linking: ab seg

namesdates: person

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: fw subst supplied surface zone

verse: rhyme

May contain Empty element

Note On this element, the global *n* attribute indicates the number or other value associated with the column which follows the point of insertion of this <cb> element. Encoders should adopt a clear and consistent policy as to whether the numbers associated with column breaks relate to the physical sequence number of the column in the whole text, or whether columns are numbered within the page. The <cb> element is placed at the head of the column to which it refers.

Example Markup of an early English dictionary printed in two columns:

```
<pb/>
<cb n="1"/>
<entryFree>
 <form>Well</form>, <sense>a Pit to hold Spring-Water</sense>:
<sense>In the Art of <hi rend="italic">War</hi>, a Depth the Miner
   sinks into the Ground, to find out and disappoint the Enemies Mines,
   or to prepare one</sense>.
</entryFree>
<entryFree>To <form>Welter</form>, <sense>to wallow</sense>, or
<sense>lie groveling</sense>.</entryFree>
<!-- remainder of column -->
<cb n="2"/>
```

```
<entryFree>
 <form>Wey</form>, <sense>the greatest Measure for dry Things,
   containing five Chaldron</sense>.
</entryFree>
<entryFree>
 <form>Whale</form>, <sense>the greatest of
   Sea-Fishes</sense>.
</entryFree>
```

Content model <content/>

Schema Declaration

```
element cb
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.edition.attributes,
   att.spanning.attributes,
   att.breaking.attributes,
   empty
}
```

<cell> contains one cell of a table. [14.1.1. TEI Tables]

Module figures

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.tableDecoration (~~role~~, @rows, @cols)

@role indicates the kind of information held in this cell or in each cell of this row.

Derived from att.tableDecoration

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: **data** data cell[Default]

label label cell

sum row or column sum data

total table total data

Contained by: figure row

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg rs sic sp stage time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Example

```
<row>
 <cell role="label">General conduct</cell>
 <cell role="data">Not satisfactory, on account of his great unpunctuality
   and inattention to duties</cell>
</row>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element cell
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.tableDecoration.attribute.rows,
   att.tableDecoration.attribute.cols,
   attribute role { "data" | "label" | "sum" | "total" }?,
   macro.specialPara}
```

<choice>

groups a number of alternative encodings for the same point in a text. [3.4. Simple Editorial Changes]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

Member of model.linePart model.pPart.editorial

Contained by

analysis: pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder handNote language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied zone

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: abbr choice corr expan orig reg sic unclear

linking: seg

transcr: am ex

Note Because the children of a <choice> element all represent alternative ways of encoding the same sequence, it is natural to think of them as mutually exclusive. However, there may be cases where a full representation of a text requires the alternative encodings to be considered as parallel.Note also that <choice> elements may self-nest.
Where the purpose of an encoding is to record multiple witnesses of a single work, rather than to identify multiple possible encoding decisions at a given point, the **<app>** element and associated elements discussed in section 12.1. The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses should be preferred.

Example An American encoding of *Gulliver's Travels* which retains the British spelling but also provides a version regularized to American spelling might be encoded as follows.

```
<p>Lastly, That, upon his solemn oath to observe all the above
articles, the said man-mountain shall have a daily allowance of
meat and drink sufficient for the support of <choice>
  <sic>1724</sic>
  <corr>1728</corr>
 </choice> of our subjects,
with free access to our royal person, and other marks of our
<choice>
  <orig>favour</orig>
  <reg>favor</reg>
 </choice>.</p>
```

Schematron <s:assert test="count(*) > 1" role="ERROR"> Element "<s:name/>" must have at least two child elements.</s:assert>

Schematron <s:assert test="(tei:corr or tei:sic or tei:expan or tei:abbr or tei:reg or tei:orig) and ((tei:corr and tei:sic) or (tei:expan and tei:abbr) or (tei:reg and tei:orig))" role="ERROR"> Element "<s:name/>" must have corresponding corr/sic, expand/abbr, reg/orig </s:assert>

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.choicePart"/>
  <elementRef key="choice"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element choice { att.global.attributes, ( model.choicePart | choice )* }
```

<cit>

(cited quotation) contains a quotation from some other document, together with a bibliographic reference to its source. In a dictionary it may contain an example text with at least one occurrence of the word form, used in the sense being described, or a translation of the headword, or an example. [3.3.3. Quotation 4.3.1. Grouped Texts 9.3.5.1. Examples]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of model.quoteLike

Contained by

core: add cit corr del desc head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear

drama: castList set

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence rendition tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: bibl cb cit gap lb listBibl milestone note pb q quote ref

figures: figure

header: biblFull

linking: anchor

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw

Example

```
<cit>
 <quote>and the breath of the whale is frequently attended with such an
insupportable smell,
   as to bring on disorder of the brain.</quote>
 <bibl>Ulloa's South America</bibl>
</cit>
```

Example

```
<entry>
 <form>
  <orth>horrifier</orth>
 </form>
 <cit type="translation" xml:lang="en">
  <quote>to horrify</quote>
 </cit>
 <cit type="example">
  <quote>elle était horrifiée par la dépense</quote>
  <cit type="translation" xml:lang="en">
   <quote>she was horrified at the expense.</quote>
  </cit>
 </cit>
</entry>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1"
```

```
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.qLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element cit
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   ( model.qLike | model.biblLike | model.ptrLike | model.global )+
}
```

<closer> groups together salutations, datelines, and similar phrases appearing as a final group at the end of a division, especially of a letter. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers 4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.written (*@hand*)

Member of model.divBottomPart

Contained by

core: lg list

figures: figure table

textstructure: back body div front group postscript

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb ref reg rs sic time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

textstructure: dateline salute signed

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Example

```
<div type="letter">
 <p> perhaps you will favour me with a sight of it when convenient.</p>
 <closer>
  <salute>I remain, &c. &c.</salute>
  <signed>H. Colburn</signed>
```

```
 </closer>
</div>
```

Example

```
<div type="chapter">
 <p>
<!-- ... --> and his heart was going like mad and yes I said yes I will
Yes.</p>
 <closer>
  <dateline>
   <name type="place">Trieste-Zürich-Paris,</name>
   <date>1914–1921</date>
  </dateline>
 </closer>
</div>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <elementRef key="signed"/>
  <elementRef key="dateline"/>
  <elementRef key="salute"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element closer
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   (
      text
    | model.gLike    | signed    | dateline    | salute    | model.phrase    | model.glob
}
```

<code> contains literal code from some formal language such as a programming language. [22.1.1. Phrase Level Terms]

Module tagdocs

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

`@lang` (formal language) a name identifying the formal language in which the code is expressed

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.word

Member of model.emphLike

Contained by

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder handNote language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain Character data only

Example

```
<code lang="JAVA"> Size fCheckbox1Size = new Size();
fCheckbox1Size.Height = 500;
fCheckbox1Size.Width = 500;
xCheckbox1.setSize(fCheckbox1Size);
</code>
```

Content model `<content> <textNode/></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element code { att.global.attributes, attribute lang { text }?, text }
```

<corr> (correction) contains the correct form of a passage apparently erroneous in the copy text. [3.4.1. Apparent Errors]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.editLike (att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*)) (att.source (*@source*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: am fw supplied zone

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Example If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been corrected, <corr> may be used alone:

```
I don't know,
Juan. It's so far in the past now — how <corr>can we</corr> prove
or disprove anyone's theories?
```

Example It is also possible, using the <choice> and <sic> elements, to provide an uncorrected reading:

```
I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now —
how <choice>
 <sic>we can</sic>
 <corr>can we</corr>
</choice> prove or
disprove anyone's theories?
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element corr
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.editLike.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   macro.paraContent}
```

<date> contains a date in any format. [3.5.4. Dates and Times 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.6. The Revision Description 3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of

a Document, and Reprint Information 15.2.3. The Setting Description 13.3.6. Dates and Times]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.datable (*@calendar*, *@period*) (att.datable.w3c (*@when*, *@notBefore*, *@notAfter*, *@from*, *@to*)) att.editLike (att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*)) (att.source (*@source*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of model.dateLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail

Contained by

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder handNote language licence principal publicationStmt rendition sponsor tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb ref reg rs sic time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Example

```
<date when="1980-02">early February 1980</date>
```

Example

```
Given on the <date when="1977-06-12">Twelfth Day
of June in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and Seventy-seven
of the Republic
the Two Hundredth and first and of the University the Eighty-Sixth.</date>
```

Example

```
<date when="1990-09">September 1990</date>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element date
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.datable.attributes,
   att.editLike.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global )*
}
```

<dateline> contains a brief description of the place, date, time, etc. of production of a letter, newspaper story, or other work, prefixed or suffixed to it as a kind of heading or trailer. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

Member of model.divWrapper

Contained by

core: lg list

drama: castList

figures: figure table

textstructure: body closer div front group opener

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb ref reg rs sic time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

textstructure: docDate

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Example

```
<dateline>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</dateline>
```

Example

```
<div type="chapter">
 <p>
<!-- ... --> and his heart was going like mad and yes I said yes I will
Yes.</p>
 <closer>
  <dateline>
   <name type="place">Trieste-Zürich-Paris,</name>
   <date>1914–1921</date>
  </dateline>
 </closer>
</div>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
  <elementRef key="docDate"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element dateline
{
   att.global.attributes,
   ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global | docDate )*
}
```

<del> (deletion) contains a letter, word, or passage deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise indicated as superfluous or spurious in the copy text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector. [3.4.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.transcriptional (*@status*, *@cause*, *@seq*) (att.editLike (att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*)) (att.source (*@source*))) (att.written (*@hand*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: am fw subst supplied zone

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Note This element should be used for deletion of shorter sequences of text, typically single words or phrases. The **<delSpan>** element should be used for longer sequences of text, for those containing structural subdivisions, and for those containing overlapping additions and deletions.The text deleted must be at least partially legible in order for the encoder to be able to transcribe it (unless it is restored in a <supplied> tag). Illegible or lost text within a deletion may be marked using the <gap> tag to signal that text is present but has not been transcribed, or is no longer visible. Attributes on the <gap> element may be used to indicate how much text is omitted, the reason for omitting it, etc. If text is not fully legible, the <unclear> element (available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources) should be used to signal the areas of text which cannot be read with confidence in a similar way.
Degrees of uncertainty over what can still be read, or whether a deletion was intended may be indicated by use of the **<certainty>** element (see 21. Certainty, Precision, and Responsibility).
There is a clear distinction in the TEI between <del> and **<surplus>** on the one hand and <gap> or <unclear> on the other. <del> indicates a deletion present in the source being transcribed, which states the author's or a later scribe's intent to cancel or remove text. **<surplus>** indicates material present in the source being transcribed which should have been so deleted, but which is not in fact. <gap> or <unclear>, by contrast, signal an editor's or encoder's decision to omit something or their inability to read the source text. See sections 11.3.1.7. Text Omitted from or Supplied in the Transcription and 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for the relationship between these and other related elements used in detailed transcription.

Example

```
<l>
 <del rend="overtyped">Mein</del> Frisch
<del rend="overstrike" type="primary">schwebt</del>
weht der Wind
</l>
```

Example

```
<del rend="overstrike">
 <gap reason="illegible" quantity="5"
  unit="character"/>
</del>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element del
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.transcriptional.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   macro.paraContent}
```

<desc>

<desc> (description) contains a brief description of the object documented by its parent element, including its intended usage, purpose, or application where this is appropriate. [22.4.1. Description of Components]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

Member of model.descLike

Contained by

core: gap graphic

gaiji: char charDecl glyph

header: category taxonomy

May contain

core: abbr address bibl choice cit date email expan foreign hi label list listBibl measure name num q quote ref rs stage time title

drama: castList

figures: table

header: biblFull idno

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex subst

Note TEI convention requires that this be expressed as a finite clause, begining with an active verb.

Example

```
<desc>contains a brief description of the purpose and application for an
element, attribute,
attribute value, class, or entity.</desc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.limitedContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element desc { att.global.attributes, macro.limitedContent }
```

 (text division) contains a subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text. [4.1. Divisions of the Body]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.written (*@hand*)

Member of model.divLike

Contained by

textstructure: back body div front

May contain

core: bibl cb cit gap head l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote sp stage

drama: castList

figures: figure table

header: biblFull

linking: ab anchor

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate epigraph floatingText opener postscript salute signed trailer

transcr: fw

Example

```
<body>
 <div type="part">
  <head>Fallacies of Authority</head>
  <p>The subject of which is Authority in various shapes, and the object,
to repress all
      exercise of the reasoning faculty.</p>
  <div n="1" type="chapter">
   <head>The Nature of Authority</head>
   <p>With reference to any proposed measures having for their object the
```

```
greatest
        happiness of the greatest number [...]</p>
    <div n="1.1" type="section">
     <head>Analysis of Authority</head>
     <p>What on any given occasion is the legitimate weight or influence to
be attached to
          authority [...] </p>
    </div>
    <div n="1.2" type="section">
     <head>Appeal to Authority, in What Cases Fallacious.</head>
     <p>Reference to authority is open to the charge of fallacy when [...]
</p>
    </div>
   </div>
  </div>
 </body>
```

Schematron <s:report test=”ancestor::tei:l”> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div. </s:report>

Schematron <s:report test=”ancestor::tei:p or ancestor::tei:ab and not(ancestor::tei:floatingText)”> Abstract model violation: p and ab may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div. </s:report>

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
   <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <sequence minOccurs="1"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
      <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
     </alternate>
     <classRef key="model.global"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
    <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
     <sequence minOccurs="1"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.common"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"
       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
     </sequence>
     <sequence minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <alternate minOccurs="1"
       maxOccurs="1">
       <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
       <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
      </alternate>
      <classRef key="model.global"
       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
     </sequence>
    </sequence>
   </alternate>
```

```
   <sequence minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"
     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   </sequence>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element div
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   (
      ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
      (
         (
            ( ( model.divLike | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )+
          | (
               ( model.common, model.global* )+,
               ( ( model.divLike | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )*
            )
         ),
         ( model.divBottom, model.global* )*
      )?
   )
}
```

<docAuthor>

<docAuthor> (document author) contains the name of the author of the document, as given on the title page (often but not always contained in a byline). [4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.canonical (*@ref*)

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

core: lg list

drama: castList

figures: figure table

textstructure: back body byline div front group titlePage

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb ref reg rs sic time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Note The document author's name often occurs within a byline, but the <docAuthor> element may be used whether the <byline> element is used or not. It should be used only for the author(s) of the entire document, not for author(s) of any subset or part of it. (Attributions of authorship of a subset or part of the document, for example of a chapter in a textbook or an article in a newspaper, may be encoded with <byline> without <docAuthor>.)

Example

```
<titlePage>
 <docTitle>
  <titlePart>Travels into Several Remote Nations of the World, in Four
     Parts.</titlePart>
 </docTitle>
 <byline> By <docAuthor>Lemuel Gulliver</docAuthor>, First a Surgeon,
   and then a Captain of several Ships</byline>
</titlePage>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element docAuthor
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.canonical.attributes,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

<docDate>

(document date) contains the date of a document, as given on a title page or in a dateline. [4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

`@when` gives the value of the date in standard form, i.e. YYYY-MM-DD.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.temporal.w3c

Note For simple dates, the *when* attribute should give the Gregorian or proleptic Gregorian date in one of the formats specified in *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition.*

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

core: lg list

drama: castList

figures: figure table

textstructure: back body dateline div docImprint front group titlePage

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb ref reg rs sic time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Note Cf. the general <date> element in the core tag set. This specialized element is provided for convenience in marking and processing the date of the documents, since it is likely to require specialized handling for many applications. It should be used only for the date of the entire document, not for any subset or part of it.

Example

```
<docImprint>Oxford, Clarendon Press, <docDate>1987</docDate>
</docImprint>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element docDate
{
   att.global.attributes,
   attribute when { text }?,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

<docEdition>

(document edition) contains an edition statement as presented on a title page of a document. [4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

Member of model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

textstructure: back front titlePage

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Note Cf. the <edition> element of bibliographic citation. As usual, the shorter name has been given to the more frequent element.

Example

```
<docEdition>The Third edition Corrected</docEdition>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element docEdition { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

<docImprint>

(document imprint) contains the imprint statement (place and date of publication, publisher name), as given (usually) at the foot of a title page. [4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

Member of model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

textstructure: back front titlePage

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb pubPlace publisher ref reg rs sic time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: code
textstructure: docDate
transcr: am ex fw subst supplied
verse: rhyme

Note Cf. the **<imprint>** element of bibliographic citations. As with title, author, and editions, the shorter name is reserved for the element likely to be used more often.

Example

```
<docImprint>Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1987</docImprint>
```

Imprints may be somewhat more complex:

```
<docImprint>
 <pubPlace>London</pubPlace>
Printed for <name>E. Nutt</name>,
at
<pubPlace>Royal Exchange</pubPlace>;
<name>J. Roberts</name> in
<pubPlace>wick-Lane</pubPlace>;
<name>A. Dodd</name> without
<pubPlace>Temple-Bar</pubPlace>;
and <name>J. Graves</name> in
<pubPlace>St. James's-street.</pubPlace>
 <date>1722.</date>
</docImprint>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <elementRef key="pubPlace"/>
  <elementRef key="docDate"/>
  <elementRef key="publisher"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element docImprint
{
   att.global.attributes,
   (
      text
    | model.gLike    | model.phrase    | pubPlace    | docDate    | publisher    | model.
}
```

<docTitle> (document title) contains the title of a document, including all its constituents, as given on a title page. [4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.canonical (*@ref*)

Member of model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

textstructure: back front titlePage

May contain

core: cb gap lb milestone note pb

figures: figure

linking: anchor

textstructure: titlePart

transcr: fw

Example

```
<docTitle>
 <titlePart type="main">The DUNCIAD, VARIOURVM.</titlePart>
 <titlePart type="sub">WITH THE PROLEGOMENA of SCRIBLERUS.</titlePart>
</docTitle>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.global"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <elementRef key="titlePart"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element docTitle
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.canonical.attributes,
   ( model.global*, ( titlePart, model.global* )+ )
}
```

<editor> contains a secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc. [3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*))

(att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.naming (*@role*, *@nymRef*) (att.canonical (*@ref*))

Member of model.respLike

Contained by

core: bibl

header: editionStmt seriesStmt titleStmt

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb ref reg rs sic time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Note A consistent format should be adopted.Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use generally recognized authority lists for the exact form of personal names.

Example

```
<editor>Eric Johnson</editor>
<editor role="illustrator">John Tenniel</editor>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element editor
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.naming.attributes,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

<email>

<email> (electronic mail address) contains an email address identifying a location to which email messages can be delivered. [3.5.2. Addresses]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

Member of model.addressLike

Contained by

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder handNote language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb ref reg rs sic time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Note The format of a modern Internet email address is defined in RFC 2822

Example

```
<email>membership@tei-c.org</email>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element email { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

<encodingDesc>

(encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived. [2.3. The Encoding Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

Member of model.teiHeaderPart

Contained by
header: teiHeader
May contain
core: p
gaiji: charDecl
header: classDecl editorialDecl listPrefixDef projectDesc refsDecl samplingDecl tagsDecl
linking: ab
Example

```
<encodingDesc>
 <p>Basic encoding, capturing lexical information only. All
   hyphenation, punctuation, and variant spellings normalized. No
   formatting or layout information preserved.</p>
</encodingDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.encodingDescPart"/>
  <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element encodingDesc
{
   att.global.attributes,
   ( model.encodingDescPart | model.pLike )+
}
```

<epigraph>

<epigraph> contains a quotation, anonymous or attributed, appearing at the start or end of a section or on a title page. [4.2.3. Arguments, Epigraphs, and Postscripts 4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions 4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by
core: lg list
drama: castList
figures: figure table
textstructure: back body div front group opener titlePage
May contain
core: bibl cb cit gap l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote sp stage
drama: castList

figures: figure table

header: biblFull

linking: ab anchor

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw

Example

```
<epigraph xml:lang="la">
 <cit>
  <bibl>Lucret.</bibl>
  <quote>
   <l part="F">petere inde coronam,</l>
   <l>Vnde prius nulli velarint tempora Musae.</l>
  </quote>
 </cit>
</epigraph>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.common"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element epigraph { att.global.attributes, ( model.common | model.global )* }
```

<ex> (editorial expansion) contains a sequence of letters added by an editor or transcriber when expanding an abbreviation. [11.3.1.2. Abbreviation and Expansion]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.editLike (att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*)) (att.source (*@source*))

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.editorial

Contained by

analysis: pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder handNote language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

gaiji: g

Example

```
The address is Southmoor <choice>
 <expan>R<ex>oa</ex>d</expan>
 <abbr>Rd</abbr>
</choice>
```

Content model `<content> <macroRef key="macro.xtext"/></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element ex { att.global.attributes, att.editLike.attributes, macro.xtext }
```

<expan> (expansion) contains the expansion of an abbreviation. [3.5.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.editLike (att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*)) (att.source (*@source*))

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.editorial

Contained by

analysis: pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder handNote language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb ref reg rs sic time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Note The content of this element should usually be a complete word or phrase. The <ex> element provided by the transcr module may be used to mark up sequences of letters supplied within such an expansion.

Example

```
The address is Southmoor <choice>
 <expan>Road</expan>
 <abbr>Rd</abbr>
</choice>
```

Example

```
<expan xml:lang="la">
 <abbr>Imp</abbr>
 <ex>erator</ex>
</expan>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element expan
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.editLike.attributes,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

<figDesc>

<figDesc> (description of figure) contains a brief prose description of the appearance or content of a graphic figure, for use when documenting an image without displaying it. [14.4. Specific Elements for Graphic Images]

Module figures

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

Contained by

figures: figure

May contain

core: abbr address bibl choice cit date email expan foreign hi label list listBibl measure name num q quote ref rs stage time title

drama: castList

figures: table

header: biblFull idno

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex subst

Note This element is intended for use as an alternative to the content of its parent <figure> element ; for example, to display when the image is required but the equipment in use cannot display graphic images. It may also be used for indexing or documentary purposes.

Example

```
<figure>
 <graphic url="emblem1.png"/>
 <head>Emblemi d'Amore</head>
 <figDesc>A pair of naked winged cupids, each holding a
   flaming torch, in a rural setting.</figDesc>
</figure>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.limitedContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element figDesc { att.global.attributes, macro.limitedContent }
```

<figure>

<figure> groups elements representing or containing graphic information such as an illustration, formula, or figure. [14.4. Specific Elements for Graphic Images]

Module figures

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.placement (*@place*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of model.global

Contained by

analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label lg list measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic sp speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castGroup castItem castList role roleDesc set

figures: cell figure table

gaiji: char glyph

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder handNote language licence principal sponsor

linking: ab seg

namesdates: person

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied surface zone

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: bibl cb cit gap graphic head l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote sp stage

drama: castList

figures: figDesc figure formula table

header: biblFull

linking: ab anchor

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph floatingText postscript salute signed trailer

transcr: fw

Example

```
<figure>
 <head>The View from the Bridge</head>
 <figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the
foreground, and a
   series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc>
 <graphic url="http://www.example.org/fig1.png"
  scale="0.5"/>
</figure>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.headLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.common"/>
  <elementRef key="figDesc"/>
  <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
  <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element figure
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.placement.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   (
      model.headLike    | model.common    | figDesc    | model.graphicLike    | model.glo
}
```

<fileDesc>

(file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file. [2.2. The File Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

Contained by

header: teiHeader

May contain

header: editionStmt extent notesStmt publicationStmt seriesStmt sourceDesc titleStmt

Note The major source of information for those seeking to create a catalogue entry or bibliographic citation for an electronic file. As such, it provides a title and statements of responsibility together with details of the publication or distribution of the file, of any series to which it belongs, and detailed bibliographic notes for matters not addressed elsewhere in the header. It also contains a full bibliographic description for the source or sources from which the electronic text was derived.

Example

```
<fileDesc>
 <titleStmt>
  <title>The shortest possible TEI document</title>
 </titleStmt>
 <publicationStmt>
  <p>Distributed as part of TEI P5</p>
 </publicationStmt>
 <sourceDesc>
  <p>No print source exists: this is an original digital text</p>
 </sourceDesc>
</fileDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="titleStmt"/>
   <elementRef key="editionStmt"
    minOccurs="0"/>
   <elementRef key="extent" minOccurs="0"/>
   <elementRef key="publicationStmt"/>
   <elementRef key="seriesStmt"
    minOccurs="0"/>
   <elementRef key="notesStmt"
    minOccurs="0"/>
  </sequence>
  <elementRef key="sourceDesc"
   minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element fileDesc
{
   att.global.attributes,
   (
```

```
      (
         titleStmt,
         editionStmt?,
         extent?,
         publicationStmt,
         seriesStmt?,
         notesStmt?
      ),
      sourceDesc+
   )
}
```

<floatingText> contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, which interrupts the text containing it at any point and after which the surrounding text resumes. [4.3.2. Floating Texts]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of model.qLike

Contained by

core: add cit corr del desc head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear

drama: castList set

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence rendition tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: cb gap lb milestone note pb

figures: figure

linking: anchor

textstructure: back body front group

transcr: fw

Note A floating text has the same content as any other <text> and may thus be interrupted by another floating text, or contain a <group> of tesselated texts.

Example

```
<body>
 <div type="scene">
  <sp>
   <p>Hush, the players begin...</p>
  </sp>
  <floatingText type="pwp">
   <body>
```

```
      <div type="act">
       <sp>
        <l>In Athens our tale takes place [...]</l>
       </sp>
<!-- ... rest of nested act here -->
      </div>
     </body>
    </floatingText>
    <sp>
     <p>Now that the play is finished ...</p>
    </sp>
   </div>
</body>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.global"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="front"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="body"/>
   <elementRef key="group"/>
  </alternate>
  <classRef key="model.global"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="back"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element floatingText
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   (
      model.global*,
      ( front, model.global* )?,
      ( body | group ),
      model.global*,
      ( back, model.global* )?
   )
}
```

<foreign> identifies a word or phrase as belonging to some language other than that of the surrounding text. [3.3.2.1. Foreign Words or Expressions]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

Member of model.emphLike

Contained by

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder handNote language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb ref reg rs sic time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Note The global *xml:lang* attribute should be supplied for this element to identify the language of the word or phrase marked. As elsewhere, its value should be a language tag as defined in 6.1. Language Identification.This element is intended for use only where no other element is available to mark the phrase or words concerned. The global *xml:lang* attribute should be used in preference to this element where it is intended to mark the language of the whole of some text element.
The **<distinct>** element may be used to identify phrases belonging to sublanguages or registers not generally regarded as true languages.

Example

```
This is
heathen Greek to you still? Your <foreign xml:lang="la">lapis
philosophicus</foreign>?
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element foreign { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

<formula> contains a mathematical or other formula. [14.2. Formulæ and Mathematical Expressions]

Module figures

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

`@notation` names the notation used for the content of the element.

Derived from att.notated

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Suggested values include: **TeX** Using TeX or LaTeX notation

Member of model.graphicLike

Contained by

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figure formula table

gaiji: char glyph

header: change distributor edition extent handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: facsimile fw supplied surface zone

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: graphic hi

figures: formula

Example

```
<formula notation="tex">$E=mc^2$</formula>
```

Example

```
<formula notation="none">E=mc<hi rend="sup">2</hi>
</formula>
```

Example

```
<formula notation="mathml">
 <m:math>
  <m:mi>E</m:mi>
  <m:mo>=</m:mo>
```

```
        <m:mi>m</m:mi>
        <m:msup>
         <m:mrow>
          <m:mi>c</m:mi>
         </m:mrow>
         <m:mrow>
          <m:mn>2</m:mn>
         </m:mrow>
        </m:msup>
       </m:math>
      </formula>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.hiLike"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element formula
{
   att.global.attributes,
   attribute notation { "TeX" }?,
   ( text | model.graphicLike | model.hiLike )*
}
```

<front> (front matter) contains any prefatory matter (headers, abstracts, title page, prefaces, dedications, etc.) found at the start of a document, before the main body. [4.6. Title Pages 4. Default Text Structure]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

Contained by

textstructure: floatingText text

transcr: facsimile

May contain

core: cb gap head lb milestone note p pb

drama: castList set

figures: figure

linking: ab anchor

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph postscript salute signed titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: fw

Note Because cultural conventions differ as to which elements are grouped as front matter and which as back matter, the content models for the <front> and <back> elements are identical.

Example

```
<front>
 <epigraph>
  <quote>Nam Sibyllam quidem Cumis ego ipse oculis meis vidi in ampulla
     pendere, et cum illi pueri dicerent: <q xml:lang="gr">Σίβυλλα τί
       θέλεις</q>; respondebat illa: <q xml:lang="gr">ἀποθανεῖν θέλω.</q>
  </quote>
 </epigraph>
 <div type="dedication">
  <p>For Ezra Pound <q xml:lang="it">il miglior fabbro.</q>
  </p>
 </div>
</front>
```

Example

```
<front>
 <div type="dedication">
  <p>To our three selves</p>
 </div>
 <div type="preface">
  <head>Author's Note</head>
  <p>All the characters in this book are purely imaginary, and if the
     author has used names that may suggest a reference to living persons
     she has done so inadvertently. ...</p>
 </div>
</front>
```

Example

```
<front>
 <div type="abstract">
  <div>
   <head> BACKGROUND:</head>
   <p>Food insecurity can put children at greater risk of obesity because
       of altered food choices and nonuniform consumption patterns.</p>
  </div>
  <div>
   <head> OBJECTIVE:</head>
   <p>We examined the association between obesity and both child-level
       food insecurity and personal food insecurity in US children.</p>
  </div>
  <div>
   <head> DESIGN:</head>
   <p>Data from 9,701 participants in the National Health and Nutrition
       Examination Survey, 2001-2010, aged 2 to 11 years were analyzed.
       Child-level food insecurity was assessed with the US Department of
       Agriculture's Food Security Survey Module based on eight
       child-specific questions. Personal food insecurity was assessed
with
       five additional questions. Obesity was defined, using physical
       measurements, as body mass index (calculated as kg/m2) greater than
       or equal to the age- and sex-specific 95th percentile of the
Centers
       for Disease Control and Prevention growth charts. Logistic
       regressions adjusted for sex, race/ethnic group, poverty level, and
       survey year were conducted to describe associations between obesity
       and food insecurity.</p>
```

```
      </div>
      <div>
       <head> RESULTS:</head>
       <p>Obesity was significantly associated with personal food insecurity
           for children aged 6 to 11 years (odds ratio=1.81; 95% CI 1.33 to
           2.48), but not in children aged 2 to 5 years (odds ratio=0.88; 95%
           CI 0.51 to 1.51). Child-level food insecurity was not associated
           with obesity among 2- to 5-year-olds or 6- to 11-year-olds.</p>
      </div>
      <div>
       <head> CONCLUSIONS:</head>
       <p>Personal food insecurity is associated with an increased risk of
           obesity only in children aged 6 to 11 years. Personal
           food-insecurity measures may give different results than aggregate
           food-insecurity measures in children.</p>
      </div>
     </div>
    </front>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
   <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.pLike.front"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
   <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
     <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
     <alternate minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
      <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
     </alternate>
    </sequence>
    <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
     <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
     <alternate minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
     </alternate>
    </sequence>
   </alternate>
   <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
    <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
     <classRef key="model.global"/>
    </alternate>
   </sequence>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
```

```
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element front
{
   att.global.attributes,
   (
      ( model.frontPart | model.pLike | model.pLike.front | model.global )*,
      (
         (
            (
               model.div1Like,
               ( model.div1Like | model.frontPart | model.global )*
            )
          | (
               model.divLike,
               ( model.divLike | model.frontPart | model.global )*
            )
         ),
         ( model.divBottom, ( model.divBottom | model.global )* )?
      )?
   )
}
```

<fw> (forme work) contains a running head (e.g. a header, footer), catchword, or similar material appearing on the current page. [11.6. Headers, Footers, and Similar Matter]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.placement (*@place*) att.written (*@hand*)

`@type` classifies the material encoded according to some useful typology.

Status Recommended

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Sample values include: **header** a running title at the top of the page

footer a running title at the bottom of the page

pageNum (page number) a page number or foliation symbol

lineNum (line number) a line number, either of prose or poetry

sig (signature) a signature or gathering symbol

catch (catchword) a catch-word

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic sp speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castGroup castItem castList role roleDesc set

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder handNote language licence principal sponsor

linking: ab seg

namesdates: person

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: fw subst supplied surface zone

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb ref reg rs sic time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Note Where running heads are consistent throughout a chapter or section, it is usually more convenient to relate them to the chapter or section, e.g. by use of the *rend* attribute. The <fw> element is intended for cases where the running head changes from page to page, or where details of page layout and the internal structure of the running heads are of paramount importance.

Example

```
<fw type="sig" place="bottom">C3</fw>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element fw
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.placement.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   attribute type { text }?,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

<g>

(character or glyph) represents a glyph, or a non-standard character. [5. Characters, Glyphs, and Writing Modes]

Module gaiji

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

`@ref` points to a description of the character or glyph intended.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.pointer

Member of model.gLike

Contained by

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell

gaiji: mapping value

header: change distributor edition extent handNote idno licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: am ex fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain Character data only

Note The name `g` is short for *gaiji*, which is the Japanese term for a non-standardized character or glyph.

Example

```
<g ref="#ctlig">ct</g>
```

This example points to a <glyph> element with the identifier `ctlig` like the following:

```
<glyph xml:id="ctlig">
<!-- here we describe the particular ct-ligature intended -->
</glyph>
```

Example

```
<g ref="#per-glyph">per</g>
```

The medieval brevigraph per could similarly be considered as an individual glyph, defined in a <glyph> element with the identifier `per` like the following:

```
<glyph xml:id="per-glyph">
<!-- ... -->
</glyph>
```

Content model `<content> <textNode/></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element g
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
```

```
   attribute ref { text }?,
   text
}
```

<gap> indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible, invisible, or inaudible. [3.4.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.timed (*@start*, *@end*) att.editLike (att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*)) (att.source (*@source*))

@reason gives the reason for omission. Sample values include sampling, inaudible, irrelevant, cancelled.
Status Optional
Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

@agent in the case of text omitted because of damage, categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.enumerated
Sample values include: **rubbing** damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges
mildew damage results from mildew on the leaf surface
smoke damage results from smoke

Member of model.global.edit

Contained by

analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label lg list measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic sp speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castGroup castItem castList role roleDesc set

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder handNote language licence principal sponsor

linking: ab seg

namesdates: person

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied surface zone

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: desc

Note The <gap>, <unclear>, and <del> core tag elements may be closely allied in use with the **<damage>** and <supplied> elements, available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources. See section 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.The <gap> tag simply signals the editors decision to omit or inability to transcribe a span of text. Other information, such as the interpretation that text was deliberately erased or covered, should be indicated using the relevant tags, such as <del> in the case of deliberate deletion.

Example

```
<gap quantity="4" unit="chars"
 reason="illegible"/>
```

Example

```
<gap quantity="1" unit="essay"
 reason="sampling"/>
```

Example

```
<del>
 <gap atLeast="4" atMost="8" unit="chars"
  reason="illegible"/>
</del>
```

Example

```
<gap extent="unknown" unit="lines"
 reason="lost"/>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="1"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element gap
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.timed.attributes,
   att.editLike.attributes,
   attribute reason { list { + } }?,
   attribute agent { text }?,
   desc?
}
```

<graphic> indicates the location of a graphic or illustration, either forming part of a text, or providing an image of it. [3.9. Graphics and Other Non-textual Components 11.1. Digital Facsimiles]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*))

(att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.media (*@width*, *@height*, *@scale*) (att.internetMedia (*@mimeType*)) att.resourced (*@url*)

Member of model.graphicLike model.titlepagePart

Contained by

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figure formula table

gaiji: char glyph

header: change distributor edition extent handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: facsimile fw supplied surface zone

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: desc

Note The *mimeType* attribute should be used to supply the MIME media type of the image specified by the *url* attribute.Within the body of a text, a <graphic> element indicates the presence of a graphic component in the source itself. Within the context of a <facsimile> or **<sourceDoc>** element, however, a <graphic> element provides an additional digital representation of some part of the source being encoded.

Example

```
<figure>
 <graphic url="fig1.png"/>
 <head>Figure One: The View from the Bridge</head>
 <figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the
foreground, and a
   series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc>
</figure>
```

Example

```
<facsimile>
 <surfaceGrp n="leaf1">
  <surface>
   <graphic url="page1.png"/>
  </surface>
  <surface>
   <graphic url="page2-highRes.png"/>
   <graphic url="page2-lowRes.png"/>
  </surface>
 </surfaceGrp>
</facsimile>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <classRef key="model.descLike"
  minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
```

```
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element graphic
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.media.attributes,
   att.resourced.attributes,
   model.descLike*
}
```

<group> contains the body of a composite text, grouping together a sequence of distinct texts (or groups of such texts) which are regarded as a unit for some purpose, for example the collected works of an author, a sequence of prose essays, etc. [4. Default Text Structure 4.3.1. Grouped Texts 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Contained by

textstructure: floatingText group text

May contain

core: cb gap head lb milestone note pb

figures: figure

linking: anchor

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph group opener postscript salute signed text trailer

transcr: fw

Example

```
<text>
<!-- Section on Alexander Pope starts -->
 <front>
<!-- biographical notice by editor -->
 </front>
 <group>
  <text>
<!-- first poem -->
  </text>
  <text>
<!-- second poem -->
  </text>
 </group>
</text>
<!-- end of Pope section-->
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
```

```
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <elementRef key="text"/>
    <elementRef key="group"/>
   </alternate>
   <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <elementRef key="text"/>
    <elementRef key="group"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
   </alternate>
  </sequence>
  <classRef key="model.divBottom"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element group
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   (
      ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
      ( ( text | group ), ( text | group | model.global )* ),
      model.divBottom*
   )
}
```

<head> (heading) contains any type of heading, for example the title of a section, or the heading of a list, glossary, manuscript description, etc. [4.2.1. Headings and Trailers]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.written (*@hand*)

Member of model.headLike model.pLike.front

Contained by

core: lg list listBibl

drama: castGroup castList set

figures: figure table

namesdates: listPerson listPlace place

textstructure: argument back body div front group postscript

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Note The <head> element is used for headings at all levels; software which treats (e.g.) chapter headings, section headings, and list titles differently must determine the proper processing of a <head> element based on its structural position. A <head> occurring as the first element of a list is the title of that list; one occurring as the first element of a **<div1>** is the title of that chapter or section.

Example The most common use for the <head> element is to mark the headings of sections. In older writings, the headings or *incipits* may be rather longer than usual in modern works. If a section has an explicit ending as well as a heading, it should be marked as a <trailer>, as in this example:

```
<div1 n="I" type="book">
 <head>In the name of Christ here begins the first book of the
ecclesiastical history of
   Georgius Florentinus, known as Gregory, Bishop of Tours.</head>
 <div2 type="section">
  <head>In the name of Christ here begins Book I of the history.</head>
  <p>Proposing as I do ...</p>
  <p>From the Passion of our Lord until the death of Saint Martin four
hundred and twelve
     years passed.</p>
  <trailer>Here ends the first Book, which covers five thousand, five
hundred and ninety-six
     years from the beginning of the world down to the death of Saint
Martin.</trailer>
 </div2>
</div1>
```

Example The <head> element is also used to mark headings of other units, such as lists:

```
With a few exceptions, connectives are equally
useful in all kinds of discourse: description, narration, exposition,
argument. <list rend="bulleted">
 <head>Connectives</head>
 <item>above</item>
 <item>accordingly</item>
 <item>across from</item>
 <item>adjacent to</item>
 <item>again</item>
 <item>
<!-- ... -->
 </item>
</list>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
```

```
  <textNode/>
  <elementRef key="lg"/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.inter"/>
  <classRef key="model.lLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element head
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   (
      text
    | lg    | model.gLike    | model.phrase    | model.inter    | model.lLike    | model.
}
```

<hi> (highlighted) marks a word or phrase as graphically distinct from the surrounding text, for reasons concerning which no claim is made. [3.3.2.2. Emphatic Words and Phrases 3.3.2. Emphasis, Foreign Words, and Unusual Language]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.written (*@hand*)

Member of model.hiLike

Contained by

analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc formula

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder handNote language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied zone

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Example

```
<hi rend="gothic">And this Indenture further witnesseth</hi>
that the said <hi rend="italic">Walter Shandy</hi>, merchant,
in consideration of the said intended marriage ...
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element hi { att.global.attributes, att.written.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

<imprimatur>

contains a formal statement authorizing the publication of a work, sometimes required to appear on a title page or its verso. [4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

Member of model.titlepagePart

Contained by

textstructure: titlePage

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Example

```
<imprimatur>Licensed and entred acording to Order.</imprimatur>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element imprimatur { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

<item>

contains one component of a list. [3.7. Lists 2.6. The Revision Description]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.sortable (*@sortKey*)

Contained by

core: list

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg rs sic sp stage time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Note May contain simple prose or a sequence of chunks.Whatever string of characters is used to label a list item in the copy text may be used as the value of the global *n* attribute, but it is not required that numbering be recorded explicitly. In ordered lists, the *n* attribute on the <item> element is by definition synonymous with the use of the <label> element to record the enumerator of the list item. In glossary lists, however, the term being defined should be given with the <label> element, not *n*.

Example

```
<list rend="numbered">
 <head>Here begin the chapter headings of Book IV</head>
 <item n="4.1">The death of Queen Clotild.</item>
 <item n="4.2">How King Lothar wanted to appropriate one third of the
Church revenues.</item>
 <item n="4.3">The wives and children of Lothar.</item>
 <item n="4.4">The Counts of the Bretons.</item>
 <item n="4.5">Saint Gall the Bishop.</item>
 <item n="4.6">The priest Cato.</item>
 <item> ...</item>
</list>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element item
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.sortable.attributes,
   macro.specialPara}
```

<l>

(verse line) contains a single, possibly incomplete, line of verse. [3.12.1. Core Tags for Verse 3.12. Passages of Verse or Drama 7.2.5. Speech Contents]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.fragmentable (*@part*)

Member of model.lLike

Contained by

core: add corr del head hi item lg note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear

drama: castList set

figures: cell figure

header: change handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi label lb list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Example

```
<l met="x/x/x/x/x/" real="/xx/x/x/x/">Shall I compare thee to a summer's
day?</l>
```

Schematron <s:report test="ancestor::tei:l[not(.//tei:note//tei:l[. = current()])]"> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain lines or lg elements. </s:report>

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.inter"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element l
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.fragmentable.attributes,
   ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.inter | model.global )*
}
```

<label> contains any label or heading used to identify part of a text, typically but not exclusively in a list or glossary. [3.7. Lists]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.placement (*@place*) att.written (*@hand*)

Member of model.labelLike

Contained by

core: add corr del desc head hi item l lg list note orig p q quote ref reg sic stage title unclear

drama: castList set

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence rendition tagUsage

linking: ab seg

namesdates: place

textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: supplied surface

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb ref reg rs sic time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Example Labels are commonly used for the headwords in glossary lists; note the use of the global *xml:lang* attribute to set the default language of the glossary list to Middle English, and identify the glosses and headings as modern English or Latin:

```
<list type="gloss" xml:lang="enm">
 <head xml:lang="en">Vocabulary</head>
 <headLabel xml:lang="en">Middle English</headLabel>
 <headItem xml:lang="en">New English</headItem>
 <label>nu</label>
 <item xml:lang="en">now</item>
 <label>lhude</label>
 <item xml:lang="en">loudly</item>
 <label>bloweth</label>
 <item xml:lang="en">blooms</item>
 <label>med</label>
 <item xml:lang="en">meadow</item>
 <label>wude</label>
 <item xml:lang="en">wood</item>
 <label>awe</label>
 <item xml:lang="en">ewe</item>
 <label>lhouth</label>
 <item xml:lang="en">lows</item>
 <label>sterteth</label>
 <item xml:lang="en">bounds, frisks (cf. <cit>
   <ref>Chaucer, K.T.644</ref>
   <quote>a courser, <term>sterting</term>as the fyr</quote>
  </cit>
 </item>
 <label>verteth</label>
 <item xml:lang="la">pedit</item>
 <label>murie</label>
 <item xml:lang="en">merrily</item>
 <label>swik</label>
 <item xml:lang="en">cease</item>
 <label>naver</label>
```

```
 <item xml:lang="en">never</item>
</list>
```

Example Labels may also be used to record explicitly the numbers or letters which mark list items in ordered lists, as in this extract from Gibbon's *Autobiography*. In this usage the <label> element is synonymous with the *n* attribute on the <item> element:

```
I will add two facts, which have seldom occurred
in the composition of six, or at least of five quartos.
<list rend="runon" type="ordered">
 <label>(1)</label>
 <item>My first rough manuscript, without any intermediate copy, has been
sent to the press.</item>
 <label>(2) </label>
 <item>Not a sheet has been seen by any human eyes, excepting those of the
author and the
   printer: the faults and the merits are exclusively my own.</item>
</list>
```

Example Labels may also be used for other structured list items, as in this extract from the journal of Edward Gibbon:

```
<list type="gloss">
 <label>March 1757.</label>
 <item>I wrote some critical observations upon Plautus.</item>
 <label>March 8th.</label>
 <item>I wrote a long dissertation upon some lines of Virgil.</item>
 <label>June.</label>
 <item>I saw Mademoiselle Curchod — <quote xml:lang="la">Omnia vincit
amor, et nos cedamus
     amori.</quote>
 </item>
 <label>August.</label>
 <item>I went to Craſſy, and ſtaid two days.</item>
</list>
```

Note that the <label> might also appear within the <item> rather than as its sibling. Though syntactically valid, this usage is not recommended TEI practice.

Example Labels may also be used to represent a label or heading attached to a paragraph or sequence of paragraphs not treated as a structural division, or to a group of verse lines. Note that, in this case, the <label> element appears *within* the <p> or <lg> element, rather than as a preceding sibling of it.

```
<p>[...]
<lb/>& n'entrer en mauuais & mal-heu-
<lb/>ré meſnage. Or des que le conſente-
<lb/>ment des parties y eſt le mariage eſt
<lb/> arreſté, quoy que de faict il ne ſoit
<label place="margin">Puiſſance maritale
   entre les Romains.</label>
 <lb/> conſommé. Depuis la conſomma-
<lb/>tion du mariage la femme eſt ſoubs
<lb/> la puiſſance du mary, s'il n'eſt eſcla-
<lb/>ue ou enfant de famille : car en ce
<lb/> cas, la femme, qui a eſpouſé vn en-
<lb/>fant de famille, eſt ſous la puiſſance
[...]</p>
```

In this example the text of the label appears in the right hand margin of the original

source, next to the paragraph it describes, but approximately in the middle of it. If so desired the *type* attribute may be used to distinguish different categories of label.

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element label
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.placement.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

<lb>

<lb> (line break) marks the start of a new (typographic) line in some edition or version of a text. [3.10.3. Milestone Elements 7.2.5. Speech Contents]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.edition (*@ed*, *@edRef*) att.spanning (*@spanTo*) att.breaking (*@break*)

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic sp speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castGroup castItem castList role roleDesc set

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder handNote language licence principal sponsor

linking: ab seg

namesdates: person

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: fw subst supplied surface zone

verse: rhyme

May contain Empty element

Note By convention, <lb> elements should appear at the point in the text where a new line starts. The *n* attribute, if used, indicates the number or other value associated with the text between this point and the next <lb> element, typically the sequence number of the line within the page, or other appropriate unit. This element is intended to be used for marking actual line breaks on a manuscript or printed page,

at the point where they occur; it should not be used to tag structural units such as lines of verse (for which the <l> element is available) except in circumstances where structural units cannot otherwise be marked.The *type* attribute may be used to characterize the line break in any respect. The more specialized attributes *break*, *ed*, or *edRef* should be preferred when the intent is to indicate whether or not the line break is word-breaking, or to note the source from which it derives.

Example This example shows typographical line breaks within metrical lines, where they occur at different places in different editions:

```
<l>Of Mans First Disobedience,<lb ed="1674"/> and<lb ed="1667"/> the
Fruit</l>
<l>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<lb ed="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</l>
<l>Brought Death into the World,<lb ed="1667"/> and all<lb ed="1674"/> our
woe,</l>
```

Example This example encodes typographical line breaks as a means of preserving the visual appearance of a title page. The *break* attribute is used to show that the line break does not (as elsewhere) mark the start of a new word.

```
<titlePart>
 <lb/>With Additions, ne-<lb break="no"/>ver before Printed.
</titlePart>
```

Content model <content/>

Schema Declaration

```
element lb
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.edition.attributes,
   att.spanning.attributes,
   att.breaking.attributes,
   empty
}
```

<lg>

(line group) contains one or more verse lines functioning as a formal unit, e.g. a stanza, refrain, verse paragraph, etc. [3.12.1. Core Tags for Verse 3.12. Passages of Verse or Drama 7.2.5. Speech Contents]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of macro.paraContent model.divPart

Contained by

core: add corr del head hi item lg note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear

drama: castList set

figures: cell figure

header: change handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: cb gap head l label lb lg milestone note pb stage

figures: figure

linking: anchor

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph opener postscript salute signed trailer

transcr: fw

Note contains verse lines or nested line groups only, possibly prefixed by a heading.

Example

```
<lg type="free">
 <l>Let me be my own fool</l>
 <l>of my own making, the sum of it</l>
</lg>
<lg type="free">
 <l>is equivocal.</l>
 <l>One says of the drunken farmer:</l>
</lg>
<lg type="free">
 <l>leave him lay off it. And this is</l>
 <l>the explanation.</l>
</lg>
```

Schematron

<sch:assert test="count(descendant::tei:lg|descendant::tei:l|descendant::tei:gap) > 0">An lg element must contain at least one child l, lg or gap element.</sch:assert>

Schematron <s:report test="ancestor::tei:l[not(.//tei:note//tei:lg[. = current()])]"> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain line groups. </s:report>

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <classRef key="model.lLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.stageLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>
   <elementRef key="lg"/>
  </alternate>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.lLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.stageLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
   <elementRef key="lg"/>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
```

```
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element lg
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   (
      ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
      ( model.lLike | model.stageLike | model.labelLike | lg ),
      ( model.lLike | model.stageLike | model.labelLike | model.global | lg )*,
      ( model.divBottom, model.global* )*
   )
}
```

<list> contains any sequence of items organized as a list. [3.7. Lists]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.sortable (*@sortKey*) att.typed (~~type~~, @subtype)

`@type` describes the nature of the items in the list.

Derived from att.typed

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Suggested values include: **gloss** each list item glosses some term or concept, which is given by a label element preceding the list item.

index each list item is an entry in an index such as the alphabetical topical index at the back of a print volume.

instructions each list item is a step in a sequence of instructions, as in a recipe.

litany each list item is one of a sequence of petitions, supplications or invocations, typically in a religious ritual.

syllogism each list item is part of an argument consisting of two or more propositions and a final conclusion derived from them.

Note Previous versions of these Guidelines recommended the use of *type* on <list> to encode the rendering or appearance of a list (whether it was bulleted, numbered, etc.). The current recommendation is to use the *rend* or *style* attributes for these aspects of a list, while using *type* for the more appropriate task of characterizing the nature of the content of a list.

Note The formal syntax of the element declarations allows <label> tags to be omitted from lists tagged <list type="gloss">; this is however a semantic error.

Member of model.listLike

Contained by

core: add corr del desc head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear

drama: castList set

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: abstract change handNote keywords licence rendition revisionDesc sourceDesc tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument back body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: cb gap head item label lb milestone note pb

figures: figure

linking: anchor

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph opener postscript salute signed trailer

transcr: fw

Note May contain an optional heading followed by a series of items, or a series of label and item pairs, the latter being optionally preceded by one or two specialized headings.

Example

```
<list rend="numbered">
 <item>a butcher</item>
 <item>a baker</item>
 <item>a candlestick maker, with
 <list rend="bulleted">
   <item>rings on his fingers</item>
   <item>bells on his toes</item>
  </list>
 </item>
</list>
```

Example

```
<list type="syllogism" rend="bulleted">
 <item>All Cretans are liars.</item>
 <item>Epimenides is a Cretan.</item>
 <item>ERGO Epimenides is a liar.</item>
</list>
```

Example

```
<list type="litany" rend="simple">
 <item>God save us from drought.</item>
 <item>God save us from pestilence.</item>
 <item>God save us from wickedness in high places.</item>
 <item>Praise be to God.</item>
</list>
```

Example The following example treats the short numbered clauses of Anglo-Saxon legal codes as lists of items. The text is from an ordinance of King Athelstan (924–939):

```
<div1 type="section">
 <head>Athelstan's Ordinance</head>
```

```
 <list rend="numbered">
  <item n="1">Concerning thieves. First, that no thief is to be spared who
is caught with
     the stolen goods, [if he is] over twelve years and [if the value of
the goods is] over
     eightpence.
  <list rend="numbered">
    <item n="1.1">And if anyone does spare one, he is to pay for the thief
with his
          wergild – and the thief is to be no nearer a settlement on that
account – or to
          clear himself by an oath of that amount.</item>
    <item n="1.2">If, however, he [the thief] wishes to defend himself or
to escape, he is
          not to be spared [whether younger or older than twelve].</item>
    <item n="1.3">If a thief is put into prison, he is to be in prison 40
days, and he may
          then be redeemed with 120 shillings; and the kindred are to stand
surety for him
          that he will desist for ever.</item>
    <item n="1.4">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him
with his wergild,
          or to bring him back there.</item>
    <item n="1.5">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him
with his wergild,
          whether to the king or to him to whom it rightly belongs; and
everyone of those who
          supported him is to pay 120 shillings to the king as a
fine.</item>
   </list>
  </item>
  <item n="2">Concerning lordless men. And we pronounced about these
lordless men, from whom
     no justice can be obtained, that one should order their kindred to
fetch back such a
     person to justice and to find him a lord in public meeting.
  <list rend="numbered">
    <item n="2.1">And if they then will not, or cannot, produce him on
that appointed day,
          he is then to be a fugitive afterwards, and he who encounters him
is to strike him
          down as a thief.</item>
    <item n="2.2">And he who harbours him after that, is to pay for him
with his wergild
          or to clear himself by an oath of that amount.</item>
   </list>
  </item>
  <item n="3">Concerning the refusal of justice. The lord who refuses
justice and upholds
     his guilty man, so that the king is appealed to, is to repay the
value of the goods and
     120 shillings to the king; and he who appeals to the king before he
demands justice as
     often as he ought, is to pay the same fine as the other would have
done, if he had
     refused him justice.
  <list rend="numbered">
    <item n="3.1">And the lord who is an accessory to a theft by his
slave, and it becomes
          known about him, is to forfeit the slave and be liable to his
wergild on the first
```

```
          occasionp if he does it more often, he is to be liable to pay all
that he owns.</item>
     <item n="3.2">And likewise any of the king's treasurers or of our
reeves, who has been
          an accessory of thieves who have committed theft, is to liable to
the same.</item>
    </list>
  </item>
  <item n="4">Concerning treachery to a lord. And we have pronounced
concerning treachery to
      a lord, that he [who is accused] is to forfeit his life if he cannot
deny it or is
      afterwards convicted at the three-fold ordeal.</item>
 </list>
</div1>
```

Note that nested lists have been used so the tagging mirrors the structure indicated by the two-level numbering of the clauses. The clauses could have been treated as a one-level list with irregular numbering, if desired.

Example

```
<p>These decrees, most blessed Pope Hadrian, we propounded in the public
council ... and they
confirmed them in our hand in your stead with the sign of the Holy Cross,
and afterwards
inscribed with a careful pen on the paper of this page, affixing thus the
sign of the Holy
Cross.
<list rend="simple">
  <item>I, Eanbald, by the grace of God archbishop of the holy church of
York, have
      subscribed to the pious and catholic validity of this document with
the sign of the Holy
      Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Ælfwold, king of the people across the Humber, consenting have
subscribed with
      the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Tilberht, prelate of the church of Hexham, rejoicing have
subscribed with the
      sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Higbald, bishop of the church of Lindisfarne, obeying have
subscribed with the
      sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Ethelbert, bishop of Candida Casa, suppliant, have subscribed
with thef sign of
      the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Ealdwulf, bishop of the church of Mayo, have subscribed with
devout will.</item>
  <item>I, Æthelwine, bishop, have subscribed through delegates.</item>
  <item>I, Sicga, patrician, have subscribed with serene mind with the
sign of the Holy
      Cross.</item>
 </list>
</p>
```

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:list[@type='gloss']">
<sch:assert test="tei:label">The content of a "gloss" list should include a sequence of one or more pairs of a label element followed by an item element</sch:assert>
</sch:rule>

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <sequence minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <elementRef key="item"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"
     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   </sequence>
   <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <elementRef key="headLabel"
     minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="headItem"
     minOccurs="0"/>
    <sequence minOccurs="1"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <elementRef key="label"/>
     <classRef key="model.global"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
     <elementRef key="item"/>
     <classRef key="model.global"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
   </sequence>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element list
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.sortable.attributes,
   att.typed.attribute.subtype,
   attribute type
   {
      "gloss" | "index" | "instructions" | "litany" | "syllogism"
   }?,
   (
      ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
      (
         ( item, model.global* )+
       | (
            headLabel?,
            headItem?,
            ( label, model.global*, item, model.global* )+
         )
      ),
      ( model.divBottom, model.global* )*
```

```
    )
}
```

<listBibl>

<listBibl> (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind. [3.11.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References 2.2.7. The Source Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.sortable (*@sortKey*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of model.biblLike

Contained by

core: add cit corr del desc head hi item l listBibl note orig p q quote ref reg relatedItem sic stage title unclear

drama: castList set

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence rendition sourceDesc tagUsage taxonomy

linking: ab seg

namesdates: person place

textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: bibl cb head lb listBibl milestone pb

header: biblFull

linking: anchor

transcr: fw

Example

```
<listBibl>
 <head>Works consulted</head>
 <bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to
   Literature in English (Yale, 1990)
 </bibl>
 <biblStruct>
  <analytic>
   <title>The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>
  </analytic>
  <monogr>
   <title>The Penny Histories</title>
   <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>
   <imprint>
    <publisher>OUP</publisher>
    <date>1968</date>
   </imprint>
  </monogr>
 </biblStruct>
</listBibl>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.headLike"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.milestoneLike"/>
  </alternate>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <elementRef key="relation"/>
   <elementRef key="listRelation"/>
  </alternate>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element listBibl
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.sortable.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   (
      model.headLike*,
      ( model.biblLike | model.milestoneLike )+,
      ( relation | listRelation )*
   )
}
```

<measure> contains a word or phrase referring to some quantity of an object or commodity, usually comprising a number, a unit, and a commodity name. [3.5.3. Numbers and Measures]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.measurement (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@commodity*)

`@type` specifies the type of measurement in any convenient typology.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Member of model.measureLike

Contained by

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder handNote language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb ref reg rs sic time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Example

```
<measure type="weight">
 <num>2</num> pounds of flesh
</measure>
<measure type="currency">£10-11-6d</measure>
<measure type="area">2 merks of old extent</measure>
```

Example

```
<measure quantity="40" unit="hogshead"
 commodity="rum">2 score hh rum</measure>
<measure quantity="12" unit="count"
 commodity="roses">1 doz. roses</measure>
<measure quantity="1" unit="count"
 commodity="tulips">a yellow tulip</measure>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element measure
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.measurement.attributes,
   attribute type { text }?,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

<milestone> marks a boundary point separating any kind of section of a text, typically but not necessarily indicating a point at which some part of a standard

reference system changes, where the change is not represented by a structural element. [3.10.3. Milestone Elements]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.milestoneUnit (*@unit*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.edition (*@ed*, *@edRef*) att.spanning (*@spanTo*) att.breaking (*@break*)

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic sp speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castGroup castItem castList role roleDesc set

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder handNote language licence principal sponsor

linking: ab seg

namesdates: person

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: fw subst supplied surface zone

verse: rhyme

May contain Empty element

Note For this element, the global *n* attribute indicates the new number or other value for the unit which changes at this milestone. The special value *unnumbered* should be used in passages which fall outside the normal numbering scheme, such as chapter or other headings, poem numbers or titles, etc.The order in which milestone elements are given at a given point is not normally significant.

Example

```
<milestone n="23" ed="La" unit="Dreissiger"/>
... <milestone n="24" ed="AV" unit="verse"/> ...
```

Content model `<content/>`

Schema Declaration

```
element milestone
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.milestoneUnit.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.edition.attributes,
   att.spanning.attributes,
   att.breaking.attributes,
   empty
}
```

<name> (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase. [3.5.1. Referring Strings]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.personal (*@full*, *@sort*) (att.naming (*@role*, *@nymRef*) (att.canonical (*@ref*))) att.datable (*@calendar*, *@period*) (att.datable.w3c (*@when*, *@notBefore*, *@notAfter*, *@from*, *@to*)) att.editLike (att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*)) (att.source (*@source*)) att.typed (~~type~~, @subtype)

`@type` characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

Derived from att.typed

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: **person**
forename
surname
personGenName
personRoleName
personAddName
nameLink
org
country
placeGeog
place

Member of model.nameLike.agent

Contained by

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp respStmt rs sic speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder handNote language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb ref reg rs sic time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Note Proper nouns referring to people, places, and organizations may be tagged instead with <persName>, <placeName>, or <orgName>, when the TEI module for names and dates is included.

Example

```
<name type="person">Thomas Hoccleve</name>
<name type="place">Villingaholt</name>
<name type="org">Vetus Latina Institut</name>
<name type="person" ref="#HOC001">Occleve</name>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element name
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.personal.attributes,
   att.datable.attributes,
   att.editLike.attributes,
   att.typed.attribute.subtype,
   attribute type
   {
      "person"
    | "forename"
    | "surname"
    | "personGenName"
    | "personRoleName"
    | "personAddName"
    | "nameLink"
    | "org"
    | "country"
    | "placeGeog"
    | "place"
   }?,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

<note> contains a note or annotation. [3.8.1. Notes and Simple Annotation 2.2.6. The Notes Statement 3.11.2.8. Notes and Statement of Language 9.3.5.4. Notes within Entries]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility

(*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.placement (*@place*) att.pointing (*@targetLang*, *@target*, *@evaluate*) att.source (*@source*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.written (*@hand*)

@anchored indicates whether the copy text shows the exact place of reference for the note.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.truthValue

Default true

Note In modern texts, notes are usually anchored by means of explicit footnote or endnote symbols. An explicit indication of the phrase or line annotated may however be used instead (e.g. 'page 218, lines 3–4'). The *anchored* attribute indicates whether any explicit location is given, whether by symbol or by prose cross-reference. The value true indicates that such an explicit location is indicated in the copy text; the value false indicates that the copy text does not indicate a specific place of attachment for the note. If the specific symbols used in the copy text at the location the note is anchored are to be recorded, use the *n* attribute.

@targetEnd points to the end of the span to which the note is attached, if the note is not embedded in the text at that point.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Note This attribute is retained for backwards compatibility; it may be removed at a subsequent release of the Guidelines. The recommended way of pointing to a span of elements is by means of the range function of XPointer, as further described in 16.2.4.6. range().

Member of model.noteLike

Contained by

analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label lg list measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic sp speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castGroup castItem castList role roleDesc set

figures: cell figure table

gaiji: char glyph

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder handNote language licence notesStmt principal sponsor

linking: ab seg

namesdates: person place

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied surface zone

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi

l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg rs sic sp stage time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Example In the following example, the translator has supplied a footnote containing an explanation of the term translated as ”painterly”:

```
And yet it is not only
in the great line of Italian renaissance art, but even in the
painterly <note place="bottom" type="gloss"
 resp="#MDMH">
 <term xml:lang="de">Malerisch</term>. This word has, in the German, two
distinct meanings, one objective, a quality residing in the object,
the other subjective, a mode of apprehension and creation. To avoid
confusion, they have been distinguished in English as
<mentioned>picturesque</mentioned> and
<mentioned>painterly</mentioned> respectively.
</note> style of the
Dutch genre painters of the seventeenth century that drapery has this
psychological significance.
```

For this example to be valid, the code MDMH must be defined elsewhere, for example by means of a responsibility statement in the associated TEI header:

```
<respStmt xml:id="MDMH">
 <resp>translation from German to English</resp>
 <name>Hottinger, Marie Donald Mackie</name>
</respStmt>
```

Example The global *n* attribute may be used to supply the symbol or number used to mark the note’s point of attachment in the source text, as in the following example:

```
Mevorakh b. Saadya's mother, the matriarch of the
family during the second half of the eleventh century,
<note n="126" anchored="true"> The
alleged mention of Judah Nagid's mother in a letter from 1071 is, in fact,
a reference to
Judah's children; cf. above, nn. 111 and 54. </note> is well known from
Geniza documents
published by Jacob Mann.
```

However, if notes are numbered in sequence and their numbering can be reconstructed automatically by processing software, it may well be considered unnecessary to record the note numbers.

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
```

```
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element note
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.placement.attributes,
   att.pointing.attributes,
   att.source.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   attribute anchored { text }?,
   attribute targetEnd { list { + } }?,
   macro.specialPara}
```

<num>

(number) contains a number, written in any form. [3.5.3. Numbers and Measures]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

@type indicates the type of numeric value.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Suggested values include: **cardinal** absolute number, e.g. 21, 21.5

ordinal ordinal number, e.g. 21st

fraction fraction, e.g. one half or three-quarters

percentage a percentage

Note If a different typology is desired, other values can be used for this attribute.

@value supplies the value of the number in standard form.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.numeric

Values a numeric value.

Note The standard form used is defined by the TEI datatype data.numeric.

Member of model.measureLike

Contained by

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder handNote language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb ref reg rs sic time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Note Detailed analyses of quantities and units of measure in historical documents may also use the feature structure mechanism described in chapter 18. Feature Structures. The <num> element is intended for use in simple applications.

Example

```
<p>I reached <num type="cardinal" value="21">twenty-one</num> on
my <num type="ordinal" value="21">twenty-first</num> birthday</p>
<p>Light travels at <num value="3E10">3×10<hi rend="sup">10</hi>
 </num> cm per second.</p>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element num
{
   att.global.attributes,
   attribute type { "cardinal" | "ordinal" | "fraction" | "percentage" }?,
   attribute value { text }?,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

<opener> groups together dateline, byline, salutation, and similar phrases appearing as a preliminary group at the start of a division, especially of a letter. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.written (*@hand*)

Member of model.divTopPart

Contained by

core: lg list

drama: castList

textstructure: body div group postscript

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb ref reg rs sic time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

textstructure: argument byline dateline epigraph salute signed

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Example

```
<opener>
 <dateline>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</dateline>
</opener>
```

Example

```
<opener>
 <dateline>
  <name type="place">Great Marlborough Street</name>
  <date>November 11, 1848</date>
 </dateline>
 <salute>My dear Sir,</salute>
</opener>
<p>I am sorry to say that absence from town and other circumstances have
prevented me from
earlier enquiring...</p>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <elementRef key="argument"/>
  <elementRef key="byline"/>
  <elementRef key="dateline"/>
  <elementRef key="epigraph"/>
  <elementRef key="salute"/>
  <elementRef key="signed"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element opener
{
   att.global.attributes,
```

```
   att.written.attributes,
   (
      text
    | model.gLike    | model.phrase    | argument    | byline    | dateline    | epigraph
}
```

<orig> (original form) contains a reading which is marked as following the original, rather than being normalized or corrected. [3.4.2. Regularization and Normalization 12. Critical Apparatus]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.source (*@source*)

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: am fw supplied zone

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Example If all that is desired is to call attention to the original version in the copy text, <orig> may be used alone:

```
<l>But this will be a <orig>meere</orig> confusion</l>
<l>And hardly shall we all be <orig>vnderstoode</orig>
</l>
```

Example More usually, an <orig> will be combined with a regularized form within a <choice> element:

```
<l>But this will be a <choice>
  <orig>meere</orig>
  <reg>mere</reg>
 </choice> confusion</l>
<l>And hardly shall we all be <choice>
  <orig>vnderstoode</orig>
  <reg>understood</reg>
 </choice>
</l>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element orig
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.source.attributes,
   macro.paraContent}
```

<p> (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose. [3.1. Paragraphs 7.2.5. Speech Contents]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.fragmentable (*@part*) att.written (*@hand*)

Member of model.pLike

Contained by

core: item note q quote sp stage

corpus: particDesc settingDesc

drama: castList set

figures: cell figure

header: abstract availability change editionStmt editorialDecl encodingDesc handNote langUsage licence prefixDef projectDesc publicationStmt refsDecl samplingDecl seriesStmt sourceDesc

namesdates: person place

textstructure: argument back body div epigraph front postscript

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Example

```
<p>Hallgerd was outside. <q>There is blood on your axe,</q> she said.
<q>What have you
   done?</q>
</p>
<p>
 <q>I have now arranged that you can be married a second time,</q> replied
Thjostolf.
</p>
<p>
 <q>Then you must mean that Thorvald is dead,</q> she said.
</p>
<p>
 <q>Yes,</q> said Thjostolf. <q>And now you must think up some plan for
me.</q>
</p>
```

Schematron <s:report test="(ancestor::tei:p or ancestor::tei:ab) and not(parent::tei:exemplum |parent::tei:item |parent::tei:note |parent::tei:q |parent::tei:quote |parent::tei:remarks |parent::tei:said |parent::tei:sp |parent::tei:stage |parent::tei:cell |parent::tei:figure)"> Abstract model violation: Paragraphs may not contain other paragraphs or ab elements. </s:report>

Schematron <s:report test="ancestor::tei:l[not(.//tei:note//tei:p[. = current()])]"> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div, p, or ab. </s:report>

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element p
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.fragmentable.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   macro.paraContent}
```

<particDesc>

(participation description) describes the identifiable speakers, voices, or other participants in any kind of text or other persons named or otherwise referred to in a text, edition, or metadata. [15.2. Contextual Information]

Module corpus

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

Contained by —

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

namesdates: listPerson person

Note May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a structured list of persons and person groups, with an optional formal specification of any relationships amongst them.

Example

```
<particDesc>
 <listPerson>
  <person xml:id="P-1234" sex="2" age="mid">
   <p>Female informant, well-educated, born in
       Shropshire UK, 12 Jan 1950, of unknown occupation. Speaks French
fluently.
       Socio-Economic status B2.</p>
  </person>
  <person xml:id="P-4332" sex="1">
   <persName>
    <surname>Hancock</surname>
    <forename>Antony</forename>
    <forename>Aloysius</forename>
    <forename>St John</forename>
   </persName>
   <residence notAfter="1959">
    <address>
     <street>Railway Cuttings</street>
     <settlement>East Cheam</settlement>
    </address>
   </residence>
   <occupation>comedian</occupation>
  </person>
  <listRelation>
   <relation type="personal" name="spouse"
    mutual="#P-1234 #P-4332"/>
  </listRelation>
 </listPerson>
</particDesc>
```

This example shows both a very simple person description, and a very detailed one, using some of the more specialized elements from the module for Names and Dates.

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
```

```
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.personLike"/>
   <elementRef key="listPerson"/>
   <elementRef key="listOrg"/>
  </alternate>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element particDesc
{
   att.global.attributes,
   ( model.pLike+ | ( model.personLike | listPerson | listOrg )+ )
}
```

<pb> (page break) marks the start of a new page in a paginated document. [3.10.3. Milestone Elements]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.edition (*@ed*, *@edRef*) att.spanning (*@spanTo*) att.breaking (*@break*)

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic sp speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castGroup castItem castList role roleDesc set

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder handNote language licence principal sponsor

linking: ab seg

namesdates: person

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: fw subst supplied surface zone

verse: rhyme

May contain Empty element

Note A <pb> element should appear at the start of the page which it identifies. The global *n* attribute indicates the number or other value associated with this page. This will normally be the page number or signature printed on it, since the physical sequence number is implicit in the presence of the <pb> element itself.The *type*

attribute may be used to characterize the page break in any respect, for example as word-breaking or not.

Example Page numbers may vary in different editions of a text.

```
<p> ... <pb n="145" ed="ed2"/>
<!-- Page 145 in edition "ed2" starts here --> ... <pb n="283" ed="ed1"/>
<!-- Page 283 in edition "ed1" starts here--> ... </p>
```

Example A page break may be associated with a facsimile image of the page it introduces by means of the *facs* attribute

```
<body>
 <pb n="1" facs="page1.png"/>
<!-- page1.png contains an image of the page;
the text it contains is encoded here -->
 <p>
<!-- ... -->
 </p>
 <pb n="2" facs="page2.png"/>
<!-- similarly, for page 2 -->
 <p>
<!-- ... -->
 </p>
</body>
```

Schematron <s:report test="parent::*/text() and not (preceding-sibling::text() and following-sibling::text())">please make sure pb elements are not at the start or end of mixed content </s:report>

Content model `<content/>`

Schema Declaration

```
element pb
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.edition.attributes,
   att.spanning.attributes,
   att.breaking.attributes,
   empty
}
```

<pc>

<pc> (punctuation character) contains a character or string of characters regarded as constituting a single punctuation mark. [17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories]

Module analysis

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.segLike (*@function*) (att.fragmentable (*@part*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

@force indicates the extent to which this punctuation mark conventionally separates words or phrases

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: **strong** the punctuation mark is a word separator

weak the punctuation mark is not a word separator

inter the punctuation mark may or may not be a word separator

`@unit` provides a name for the kind of unit delimited by this punctuation mark.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

`@pre` indicates whether this punctuation mark precedes or follows the unit it delimits.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.truthValue

Member of model.segLike

Contained by

analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied zone

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c

core: abbr add choice corr del expan orig reg sic unclear

gaiji: g

transcr: am ex subst supplied

Example

```
<phr>
 <w>do</w>
 <w>you</w>
 <w>understand</w>
 <pc type="interrogative">?</pc>
</phr>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <elementRef key="c"/>
  <classRef key="model.pPart.edit"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element pc
{
```

```
   att.global.attributes,
   att.segLike.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   attribute force { "strong" | "weak" | "inter" }?,
   attribute unit { text }?,
   attribute pre { text }?,
   ( text | model.gLike | c | model.pPart.edit )*
}
```

<postscript>

<postscript> contains a postscript, e.g. to a letter. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

Member of model.divBottomPart

Contained by

core: lg list

figures: figure table

textstructure: back body div front group postscript

May contain

core: bibl cb cit gap head l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote sp stage

drama: castList

figures: figure table

header: biblFull

linking: ab anchor

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

textstructure: closer floatingText opener postscript signed trailer

transcr: fw

Example

```
<div type="letter">
 <opener>
  <dateline>
   <placeName>Rimaone</placeName>
   <date when="2006-11-21">21 Nov 06</date>
  </dateline>
  <salute>Dear Susan,</salute>
 </opener>
 <p>Thank you very much for the assistance splitting those
   logs. I'm sorry about the misunderstanding as to the size of
   the task. I really was not asking for help, only to borrow the
   axe. Hope you had fun in any case.</p>
 <closer>
  <salute>Sincerely yours,</salute>
  <signed>Seymour</signed>
 </closer>
 <postscript>
  <label>P.S.</label>
  <p>The collision occured on <date when="2001-07-06">06 Jul
01</date>.</p>
```

```
      </postscript>
     </div>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
   <classRef key="model.divTopPart"/>
  </alternate>
  <classRef key="model.common"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
   <classRef key="model.common"/>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.divBottomPart"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element postscript
{
   att.global.attributes,
   (
      ( model.global | model.divTopPart )*,
      model.common,
      ( model.global | model.common )*,
      ( model.divBottomPart, model.global* )*
   )
}
```

<profileDesc>

<profileDesc> (text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting. [2.4. The Profile Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

Member of model.teiHeaderPart

Contained by

header: teiHeader

May contain

corpus: settingDesc

header: abstract creation langUsage textClass

Note Although the content model permits it, it is rarely meaningful to supply multiple occurrences for any of the child elements of <profileDesc> unless these are documenting multiple texts.In earlier versions of these Guidelines, it was required that the <creation> element appear first.

Example

```
<profileDesc>
 <langUsage>
  <language ident="fr">French</language>
 </langUsage>
 <textDesc n="novel">
  <channel mode="w">print; part issues</channel>
  <constitution type="single"/>
  <derivation type="original"/>
  <domain type="art"/>
  <factuality type="fiction"/>
  <interaction type="none"/>
  <preparedness type="prepared"/>
  <purpose type="entertain" degree="high"/>
  <purpose type="inform" degree="medium"/>
 </textDesc>
 <settingDesc>
  <setting>
   <name>Paris, France</name>
   <time>Late 19th century</time>
  </setting>
 </settingDesc>
</profileDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <classRef key="model.profileDescPart"
  minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element profileDesc { att.global.attributes, model.profileDescPart* }
```

<pubPlace>

<pubPlace> (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published. [3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.naming (*@role*, *@nymRef*) (att.canonical (*@ref*))

Member of model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.detail

Contained by

core: bibl

header: publicationStmt

textstructure: docImprint

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb ref reg rs sic time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Example

```
<publicationStmt>
 <publisher>Oxford University Press</publisher>
 <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
 <date>1989</date>
</publicationStmt>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element pubPlace
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.naming.attributes,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

<publisher>

<publisher> provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item. [3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

Member of model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.agency

Contained by

core: bibl

header: publicationStmt

textstructure: docImprint

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb ref reg rs sic time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Note Use the full form of the name by which a company is usually referred to, rather than any abbreviation of it which may appear on a title page

Example

```
<imprint>
 <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
 <publisher>Clarendon Press</publisher>
 <date>1987</date>
</imprint>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element publisher { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

<q> (quoted) contains material which is distinguished from the surrounding text using quotation marks or a similar method, for any one of a variety of reasons including, but not limited to: direct speech or thought, technical terms or jargon, authorial distance, quotations from elsewhere, and passages that are mentioned but not used. [3.3.3. Quotation]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.ascribed (*@who*) att.source (*@source*)

`@type` may be used to indicate whether the offset passage is spoken or thought, or to characterize it more finely.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Suggested values include: **spoken** representation of speech

thought representation of thought, e.g. internal monologue

written quotation from a written source

soCalled authorial distance

foreign

distinct linguistically distinct

term technical term
emph rhetorically emphasized
mentioned refering to itself, not its normal referent

Member of model.qLike
Contained by
core: add cit corr del desc head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear
drama: castList set
figures: cell figDesc figure
header: change handNote licence rendition tagUsage
linking: ab seg
textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer
transcr: supplied
verse: rhyme
May contain
analysis: c pc s w
core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg rs sic sp stage time title unclear
drama: castList
figures: figure formula table
gaiji: g
header: biblFull idno
linking: ab anchor seg
namesdates: listPerson listPlace
tagdocs: code
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: am ex fw subst supplied
verse: rhyme
Note May be used to indicate that a passage is distinguished from the surrounding text for reasons concerning which no claim is made. When used in this manner, <q> may be thought of as syntactic sugar for <hi> with a value of *rend* that indicates the use of such mechanisms as quotation marks.
Example

```
It is spelled <q>Tübingen</q> – to enter the
letter <q>u</q> with an umlaut hold down the <q>option</q> key and press
<q>0 0 f c</q>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element q
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.ascribed.attributes,
   att.source.attributes,
   attribute type
   {
      "spoken"
    | "thought"
    | "written"
    | "soCalled"
    | "foreign"
    | "distinct"
    | "term"
    | "emph"
    | "mentioned"
   }?,
   macro.specialPara}
```

<quote>

<quote> (quotation) contains a phrase or passage attributed by the narrator or author to some agency external to the text. [3.3.3. Quotation 4.3.1. Grouped Texts]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.source (*@source*)

Member of model.quoteLike

Contained by

core: add cit corr del desc head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear

drama: castList set

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence rendition tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg rs sic sp stage time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Note If a bibliographic citation is supplied for the source of a quotation, the two may be grouped using the <cit> element.

Example

```
Lexicography has shown little sign of being affected by the
work of followers of J.R. Firth, probably best summarized in his
slogan, <quote>You shall know a word by the company it
keeps</quote>
<ref>(Firth, 1957)</ref>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element quote
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.source.attributes,
   macro.specialPara}
```

<ref>

<ref> (reference) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment. [3.6. Simple Links and Cross-References 16.1. Links]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.pointing (*@targetLang*, *@target*, *@evaluate*) att.internetMedia (*@mimeType*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.cReferencing (*@cRef*)

Member of model.ptrLike

Contained by

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope cit corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg relatedItem resp rs sic speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder handNote language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Note The *target* and *cRef* attributes are mutually exclusive.

Example

```
See especially
<ref target="http://www.natcorp.ox.ac.uk/Texts/A02.xml#s2">the second
sentence</ref>
```

Example

```
See also <ref target="#locution">s.v. <term>locution</term>
</ref>.
```

Schematron <s:report test="@target and @cRef">Only one of the attributes @target' and @cRef' may be supplied on <s:name/> </s:report>

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element ref
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.pointing.attributes,
   att.internetMedia.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.cReferencing.attributes,
   macro.paraContent}
```

<reg>

<reg> (regularization) contains a reading which has been regularized or normalized in some sense. [3.4.2. Regularization and Normalization 12. Critical Apparatus]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.editLike (att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*)) (att.source (*@source*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: am fw supplied zone

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Example If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been regularized, <reg> may be used alone:

```
<q>Please <reg>knock</reg> if an <reg>answer</reg> is <reg>required</reg>
</q>
```

Example It is also possible to identify the individual responsible for the regularization, and, using the <choice> and <orig> elements, to provide both the original and regularized readings:

```
<q>Please <choice>
  <reg resp="#LB">knock</reg>
  <orig>cnk</orig>
 </choice> if an <choice>
  <reg>answer</reg>
  <orig>nsr</orig>
```

```
  </choice> is <choice>
   <reg>required</reg>
   <orig>reqd</orig>
  </choice>
 </q>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element reg
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.editLike.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   macro.paraContent}
```

<relatedItem> contains or references some other bibliographic item which is related to the present one in some specified manner, for example as a constituent or alternative version of it. [3.11.2.7. Related Items]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

`@target` points to the related bibliographic element by means of an absolute or relative URI reference

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.pointer

Member of model.biblPart

Contained by

core: bibl

header: notesStmt

May contain

core: bibl listBibl ref

header: biblFull

Note If the *target* attribute is used to reference the related bibliographic item, the element should be empty.

Example

```
<biblStruct>
 <monogr>
  <author>Shirley, James</author>
  <title type="main">The gentlemen of Venice</title>
  <imprint>
   <pubPlace>New York</pubPlace>
```

```
      <publisher>Readex Microprint</publisher>
      <date>1953</date>
     </imprint>
     <extent>1 microprint card, 23 x 15 cm.</extent>
    </monogr>
    <series>
     <title>Three centuries of drama: English, 1642–1700</title>
    </series>
    <relatedItem type="otherForm">
     <biblStruct>
      <monogr>
       <author>Shirley, James</author>
       <title type="main">The gentlemen of Venice</title>
       <title type="sub">a tragi-comedie presented at the private house in
Salisbury
            Court by Her Majesties servants</title>
       <imprint>
        <pubPlace>London</pubPlace>
        <publisher>H. Moseley</publisher>
        <date>1655</date>
       </imprint>
       <extent>78 p.</extent>
      </monogr>
     </biblStruct>
    </relatedItem>
   </biblStruct>
```

Schematron <sch:report test="@target and count(child::*) > 0">If the @target attribute on <sch:name/> is used, the relatedItem element must be empty</sch:report> <sch:assert test="@target or child::*">A relatedItem element should have either a 'target' attribute or a child element to indicate the related bibliographic item</sch:assert>

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element relatedItem
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   attribute target { text }?,
   ( model.biblLike | model.ptrLike )?
}
```

<revisionDesc>

<revisionDesc> (revision description) summarizes the revision history for a file. [2.6. The Revision Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*))

(att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.docStatus (*@status*)

Contained by

header: teiHeader

May contain

core: list

header: change listChange

Note If present on this element, the *status* attribute should indicate the current status of the document. The same attribute may appear on any <change> to record the status at the time of that change. Conventionally change elements should be given in reverse date order, with the most recent change at the start of the list.

Example

```
<revisionDesc status="embargoed">
 <change when="1991-11-11" who="#LB"> deleted chapter 10 </change>
</revisionDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <elementRef key="list"/>
  <elementRef key="listChange"/>
  <elementRef key="change" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element revisionDesc
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.docStatus.attributes,
   ( list | listChange | change+ )
}
```

<rhyme> marks the rhyming part of a metrical line. [6.5. Rhyme]

Module verse

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

@label provides a label (usually a single letter) to identify which part of a rhyme scheme this rhyming string instantiates.

Status Recommended

Datatype teidata.word

Note Within a particular scope, all <rhyme> elements with the same value for their *label* attribute are assumed to rhyme with each other. The scope is defined by the nearest ancestor element for which the *rhyme* attribute has been supplied.

Member of model.lPart

Contained by

analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Example

```
<lg rhyme="abababcc">
 <l>'Tis pity learned virgins ever <rhyme label="a">wed</rhyme>
 </l>
 <l>With persons of no sort of edu<rhyme label="b">cation</rhyme>,</l>
 <l>Or gentlemen, who, though well born and
<rhyme label="a">bred</rhyme>,</l>
 <l>Grow tired of scientific conver<rhyme label="b">sation</rhyme>:</l>
 <l>I don't choose to say much on this <rhyme label="a">head</rhyme>,</l>
 <l>I'm a plain man, and in a single <rhyme label="b">station</rhyme>,</l>
 <l>But — Oh! ye lords of ladies
inte<rhyme label="c">llectual</rhyme>,</l>
 <l>Inform us truly, have they not hen-<rhyme label="a">peck'd you
all</rhyme>?</l>
</lg>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element rhyme
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   attribute label { text }?,
   macro.paraContent}
```

<role> contains the name of a dramatic role, as given in a cast list. [7.1.4. Cast Lists]

Module drama

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

Member of model.castItemPart

Contained by

drama: castItem

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb ref reg rs sic time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Note It is important to assign a meaningful ID attribute to the <role> element, since this ID is referred to by *who* attributes on many other elements.

Example

```
<role xml:id="jt">Joan Trash</role>
<roleDesc>A Ginger-bread-woman</roleDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element role { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

<roleDesc> (role description) describes a character's role in a drama. [7.1.4. Cast Lists]

Module drama

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

Member of model.castItemPart

Contained by

drama: castGroup castItem

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb ref reg rs sic time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Example

```
<roleDesc>gentlemen of leisure</roleDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element roleDesc { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

<row> contains one row of a table. [14.1.1. TEI Tables]

Module figures

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.tableDecoration (~~role~~, @rows, @cols)

@role indicates the kind of information held in this cell or in each cell of this row.

Derived from att.tableDecoration

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: **data** data cell[Default]

label label cell

sum row or column sum data

total table total data

Contained by: table

May contain

figures: cell

Example

```
<row role="data">
 <cell role="label">Classics</cell>
 <cell>Idle listless and unimproving</cell>
</row>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <elementRef key="cell" minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element row
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.tableDecoration.attribute.rows,
   att.tableDecoration.attribute.cols,
   attribute role { "data" | "label" | "sum" | "total" }?,
   cell+
}
```

<rs> (referencing string) contains a general purpose name or referring string. [13.2.1. Personal Names 3.5.1. Referring Strings]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.naming (*@role*, *@nymRef*) (att.canonical (*@ref*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.source (*@source*)

Member of model.nameLike

Contained by

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder handNote language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb ref reg rs sic time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Example

```
<q>My dear <rs type="person">Mr. Bennet</rs>, </q> said
<rs type="person">his lady</rs>
to him one day,
<q>have you heard that <rs type="place">Netherfield Park</rs> is let at
last?</q>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element rs
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.naming.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.source.attributes,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

<s> (s-unit) contains a sentence-like division of a text. [17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories 8.4.1. Segmentation]

Module analysis

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.segLike (*@function*) (att.fragmentable (*@part*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of model.segLike

Contained by

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied zone

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb ref reg rs sic time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Note The <s> element may be used to mark orthographic sentences, or any other segmentation of a text, provided that the segmentation is end-to-end, complete, and non-nesting. For segmentation which is partial or recursive, the <seg> should be used instead.The *type* attribute may be used to indicate the type of segmentation intended, according to any convenient typology.

Example

```
<head>
 <s>A short affair</s>
</head>
<s>When are you leaving?</s>
<s>Tomorrow.</s>
```

Schematron <s:report test="tei:s">You may not nest one s element within another: use seg instead</s:report>

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element s
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.segLike.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

<salute> (salutation) contains a salutation or greeting prefixed to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text, or the salutation in the closing of a letter, preface, etc. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.written (*@hand*)

Member of model.divWrapper

Contained by

core: lg list

drama: castList

figures: figure table

textstructure: body closer div front group opener

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Example

```
<salute>To all courteous mindes, that will voutchsafe the
readinge.</salute>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element salute
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   macro.paraContent}
```

<seg> (arbitrary segment) represents any segmentation of text below the 'chunk' level. [16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors 6.2. Components of the Verse Line 7.2.5. Speech Contents]

Module linking

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.segLike (*@function*) (att.fragmentable (*@part*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.source (*@source*) att.written (*@hand*)

Member of model.choicePart model.segLike

Contained by

analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied zone

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Note The <seg> element may be used at the encoder's discretion to mark any segments of the text of interest for processing. One use of the element is to mark text features for which no appropriate markup is otherwise defined. Another use is to provide an identifier for some segment which is to be pointed at by some other element—i.e. to provide a target, or a part of a target, for a **<ptr>** or other similar element.

Example

```
<seg>When are you leaving?</seg>
<seg>Tomorrow.</seg>
```

Example

```
<s>
 <seg rend="caps" type="initial-cap">So father's only</seg> glory was the
ballfield.
</s>
```

Example

```
<seg type="preamble">
 <seg>Sigmund, <seg type="patronym">the son of Volsung</seg>, was a king
in Frankish country.</seg>
 <seg>Sinfiotli was the eldest of his sons ...</seg>
 <seg>Borghild, Sigmund's wife, had a brother ... </seg>
</seg>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element seg
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.segLike.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.source.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   macro.paraContent}
```

<sic>

(Latin for thus or so) contains text reproduced although apparently incorrect or inaccurate. [3.4.1. Apparent Errors]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.source (*@source*)

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: am fw supplied zone

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Example

```
for his nose was as sharp as
a pen, and <sic>a Table</sic> of green fields.
```

Example If all that is desired is to call attention to the apparent problem in the copy text, <sic> may be used alone:

```
I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now
— how <sic>we can</sic> prove or disprove anyone's theories?
```

Example It is also possible, using the <choice> and <corr> elements, to provide a corrected reading:

```
I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now
— how <choice>
 <sic>we can</sic>
 <corr>can we</corr>
</choice> prove or disprove anyone's theories?
```

Example

```
for his nose was as sharp as
a pen, and <choice>
 <sic>a Table</sic>
 <corr>a' babbld</corr>
</choice> of green fields.
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element sic { att.global.attributes, att.source.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

<signed> (signature) contains the closing salutation, etc., appended to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

Member of model.divBottomPart model.divTopPart

Contained by

core: lg list

drama: castList

figures: figure table

textstructure: back body closer div front group opener postscript

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Example

```
<signed>Thine to command <name>Humph. Moseley</name>
</signed>
```

Example

```
<closer>
 <signed>Sign'd and Seal'd,
 <list>
   <item>John Bull,</item>
   <item>Nic. Frog.</item>
  </list>
 </signed>
</closer>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element signed { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

<sp> (speech) contains an individual speech in a performance text, or a passage presented as such in a prose or verse text. [3.12.2. Core Tags for Drama 3.12. Passages of Verse or Drama 7.2.2. Speeches and Speakers]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.ascribed (*@who*)

Member of model.divPart

Contained by

core: item note q quote stage

drama: castList set

figures: cell figure

header: change handNote licence

textstructure: argument body div epigraph postscript

May contain

core: cb cit gap l lb lg list milestone note p pb q quote speaker stage

figures: figure table

linking: ab anchor

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw

Note The *who* attribute on this element may be used either in addition to the <speaker> element or as an alternative.

Example

```
<sp>
 <speaker>The reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
 <p>I do not think I have named a single unpresentable fish.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
 <speaker>Mr Gryll</speaker>
 <p>Bream, Doctor: there is not much to be said for bream.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
 <speaker>The Reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
 <p>On the contrary, sir, I think there is much to be said for him. In the
first place [...]</p>
 <p>Fish, Miss Gryll — I could discourse to you on fish by the hour: but
for the present I
   will forbear [...]</p>
</sp>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.global"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
```

```
  <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="speaker"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
  <sequence minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <elementRef key="lg"/>
    <classRef key="model.lLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.listLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.stageLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.qLike"/>
   </alternate>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element sp
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.ascribed.attributes,
   (
      model.global*,
      ( speaker, model.global* )?,
      (
         (
            lg          | model.lLike          | model.pLike          | model.listLike
         model.global*
      )+
   )
}
```

<speaker> contains a specialized form of heading or label, giving the name of one or more speakers in a dramatic text or fragment. [3.12.2. Core Tags for Drama]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

Contained by

core: sp

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb ref reg rs sic time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Example

```
<sp who="#ni #rsa">
 <speaker>Nancy and Robert</speaker>
 <stage type="delivery">(speaking simultaneously)</stage>
 <p>The future? ...</p>
</sp>
<list type="speakers">
 <item xml:id="ni"/>
 <item xml:id="rsa"/>
</list>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element speaker { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

<stage> (stage direction) contains any kind of stage direction within a dramatic text or fragment. [3.12.2. Core Tags for Drama 3.12. Passages of Verse or Drama 7.2.4. Stage Directions]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.ascribed (*@who*) att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.placement (*@place*)

`@type` indicates the kind of stage direction.

Status Recommended

Datatype 0–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace

Suggested values include: **setting** describes a setting.

entrance describes an entrance.

exit describes an exit.

business describes stage business.

novelistic is a narrative, motivating stage direction.

delivery describes how a character speaks.

modifier gives some detail about a character.

location describes a location.

mixed more than one of the above

Note If the value `mixed` is used, it must be the only value. Multiple values may however be supplied if a single stage direction performs multiple functions, for example is both an entrance and a modifier.

Member of model.stageLike

Contained by

core: add corr del desc head hi item l lg note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear

drama: castList set

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence rendition tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg rs sic sp stage time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Note The *who* attribute may be used to indicate more precisely the person or persons participating in the action described by the stage direction.

Example

```
<stage type="setting">A curtain being drawn.</stage>
<stage type="setting">Music</stage>
<stage type="entrance">Enter Husband as being thrown off his horse and
falls.</stage>
<!-- Middleton : Yorkshire Tragedy -->
<stage type="exit">Exit pursued by a bear.</stage>
<stage type="business">He quickly takes the stone out.</stage>
<stage type="delivery">To Lussurioso.</stage>
<stage type="novelistic">Having had enough, and embarrassed for the
family.</stage>
<!-- Lorraine Hansbury : a raisin in in the sun -->
<stage type="modifier">Disguised as Ansaldo.</stage>
<stage type="entrance modifier">Enter Latrocinio disguised as an
empiric</stage>
<!-- Middleton: The Widow -->
<stage type="location">At a window.</stage>
<stage rend="inline" type="delivery">Aside.</stage>
```

Example

```
<l>Behold. <stage n="*" place="margin">Here the vp<lb/>per part of the
<hi>Scene</hi> open'd; when
   straight appear'd a Heauen, and all the <hi>Pure Artes</hi> sitting on
   two semi<lb/>circular ben<lb/>ches, one a<lb/>boue another: who sate
thus till the rest of the
 <hi>Prologue</hi> was spoken, which being ended, they descended in
   order within the <hi>Scene,</hi> whiles the Musicke plaid</stage> Our
Poet knowing our free hearts</l>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element stage
{
   att.ascribed.attributes,
   att.global.attributes,
   att.placement.attributes,
   attribute type
   {
      list
      {
         (
            "setting"
          | "entrance"
          | "exit"
          | "business"
          | "novelistic"
          | "delivery"
          | "modifier"
          | "location"
          | "mixed"
         )*
      }
   }?,
   macro.specialPara}
```

<subst> (substitution) groups one or more deletions with one or more additions when the combination is to be regarded as a single intervention in the text. [11.3.1.5. Substitutions]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.transcriptional (*@status*, *@cause*, *@seq*) (att.editLike (att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*)) (att.source (*@source*))) (att.written (*@hand*))

Member of model.pPart.editorial

Contained by

analysis: pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder handNote language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: add cb del lb milestone pb

linking: anchor

transcr: fw

Example

```
... are all included. <del hand="#RG">It is</del>
<subst>
 <add>T</add>
 <del>t</del>
</subst>he expressed
```

Example

```
 that he and his Sister Miſs D — <lb/>who always lived with him, wd. be
<subst>
 <del>very</del>
 <lb/>
 <add>principally</add>
</subst> remembered in her Will.
```

Example

```
<ab>τ<subst>
  <add place="above">ῶν</add>
  <del>α</del>
 </subst>
συνκυρόντ<subst>
  <add place="above">ων</add>
  <del>α</del>
 </subst>
ἐργαστηρί<subst>
  <add place="above">ων</add>
  <del>α</del>
 </subst>
</ab>
```

Example

```
<subst>
 <del>
  <gap reason="illegible" quantity="5"
   unit="character"/>
```

```
 </del>
 <add>apple</add>
</subst>
```

Schematron <s:assert test="child::tei:add and child::tei:del"> <s:name/> must have at least one child add and at least one child del</s:assert>

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <elementRef key="add"/>
  <elementRef key="del"/>
  <classRef key="model.milestoneLike"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element subst
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.transcriptional.attributes,
   ( add | del | model.milestoneLike )+
}
```

<supplied>

<supplied> signifies text supplied by the transcriber or editor for any reason; for example because the original cannot be read due to physical damage, or because of an obvious omission by the author or scribe. [11.3.3.1. Damage, Illegibility, and Supplied Text]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.editLike (att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*)) (att.source (*@source*))

`@reason` one or more words indicating why the text has had to be supplied, e.g. *overbinding*, *faded-ink*, *lost-folio*, *omitted-in-original*.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

Member of model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: am fw supplied zone

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Note The <damage>, <gap>, <del>, <unclear> and <supplied> elements may be closely allied in use. See section 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

Example

```
I am dr Sr yr
<supplied reason="illegible"
 source="#amanuensis_copy">very humble Servt</supplied>
Sydney Smith
```

Example

```
<supplied reason="omitted-in-original">Dedication</supplied> to the duke of
Bejar
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element supplied
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.editLike.attributes,
   attribute reason { list { + } }?,
   macro.paraContent}
```

<table> contains text displayed in tabular form, in rows and columns. [14.1.1. TEI Tables]

Module figures

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

@rows indicates the number of rows in the table.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.count

Note If no number is supplied, an application must calculate the number of rows.Rows should be presented from top to bottom.

@cols (columns) indicates the number of columns in each row of the table.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.count

Note If no number is supplied, an application must calculate the number of columns.Within each row, columns should be presented left to right.

Member of model.listLike

Contained by

core: add corr del desc head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear

drama: castList set

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: abstract change handNote licence rendition sourceDesc tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument back body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: cb gap graphic head lb milestone note pb

figures: figure formula row

linking: anchor

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph postscript salute signed trailer

transcr: fw

Note Contains an optional heading and a series of rows.Any rendition information should be supplied using the global *rend* attribute, at the table, row, or cell level as appropriate.

Example

```
<table rows="4" cols="4">
 <head>Poor Men's Lodgings in Norfolk (Mayhew, 1843)</head>
 <row role="label">
  <cell role="data"/>
  <cell role="data">Dossing Cribs or Lodging Houses</cell>
  <cell role="data">Beds</cell>
  <cell role="data">Needys or Nightly Lodgers</cell>
 </row>
```

```
      <row role="data">
       <cell role="label">Bury St Edmund's</cell>
       <cell role="data">5</cell>
       <cell role="data">8</cell>
       <cell role="data">128</cell>
      </row>
      <row role="data">
       <cell role="label">Thetford</cell>
       <cell role="data">3</cell>
       <cell role="data">6</cell>
       <cell role="data">36</cell>
      </row>
      <row role="data">
       <cell role="label">Attleboro'</cell>
       <cell role="data">3</cell>
       <cell role="data">5</cell>
       <cell role="data">20</cell>
      </row>
      <row role="data">
       <cell role="label">Wymondham</cell>
       <cell role="data">1</cell>
       <cell role="data">11</cell>
       <cell role="data">22</cell>
      </row>
     </table>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.headLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <sequence minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <elementRef key="row"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"
     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   </sequence>
   <sequence minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"
     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   </sequence>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element table
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   attribute rows { text }?,
   attribute cols { text }?,
   (
      ( model.headLike | model.global )*,
      ( ( row, model.global* )+ | ( model.graphicLike, model.global* )+ ),
      ( model.divBottom, model.global* )*
   )
}
```

<teiHeader>

<teiHeader> (TEI header) supplies descriptive and declarative metadata associated with a digital resource or set of resources. [2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

Contained by

core: teiCorpus

textstructure: TEI

May contain

header: encodingDesc fileDesc profileDesc revisionDesc xenoData

Note One of the few elements unconditionally required in any TEI document.

Example

```
<teiHeader>
 <fileDesc>
  <titleStmt>
   <title>Shakespeare: the first folio (1623) in electronic form</title>
   <author>Shakespeare, William (1564–1616)</author>
   <respStmt>
    <resp>Originally prepared by</resp>
    <name>Trevor Howard-Hill</name>
   </respStmt>
   <respStmt>
    <resp>Revised and edited by</resp>
    <name>Christine Avern-Carr</name>
   </respStmt>
  </titleStmt>
  <publicationStmt>
   <distributor>Oxford Text Archive</distributor>
   <address>
    <addrLine>13 Banbury Road, Oxford OX2 6NN, UK</addrLine>
   </address>
   <idno type="OTA">119</idno>
   <availability>
    <p>Freely available on a non-commercial basis.</p>
   </availability>
   <date when="1968">1968</date>
  </publicationStmt>
```

```
  <sourceDesc>
   <bibl>The first folio of Shakespeare, prepared by Charlton Hinman (The
Norton Facsimile,
       1968)</bibl>
  </sourceDesc>
 </fileDesc>
 <encodingDesc>
  <projectDesc>
   <p>Originally prepared for use in the production of a series of
old-spelling
       concordances in 1968, this text was extensively checked and revised
for use during the
       editing of the new Oxford Shakespeare (Wells and Taylor, 1989).</p>
  </projectDesc>
  <editorialDecl>
   <correction>
    <p>Turned letters are silently corrected.</p>
   </correction>
   <normalization>
    <p>Original spelling and typography is retained, except that long s
and ligatured
         forms are not encoded.</p>
   </normalization>
  </editorialDecl>
  <refsDecl xml:id="ASLREF">
   <cRefPattern matchPattern="(\S+) ([^.]+)\.(.*)"
    replacementPattern="#xpath(//div1[@n='$1']/div2/[@n='$2']//lb[@n='$3'])">
    <p>A reference is created by assembling the following, in the reverse
order as that
         listed here: <list>
       <item>the <att>n</att> value of the preceding <gi>lb</gi>
       </item>
       <item>a period</item>
       <item>the <att>n</att> value of the ancestor <gi>div2</gi>
       </item>
       <item>a space</item>
       <item>the <att>n</att> value of the parent <gi>div1</gi>
       </item>
     </list>
    </p>
   </cRefPattern>
  </refsDecl>
 </encodingDesc>
 <revisionDesc>
  <list>
   <item>
    <date when="1989-04-12">12 Apr 89</date> Last checked by CAC</item>
   <item>
    <date when="1989-03-01">1 Mar 89</date> LB made new file</item>
  </list>
 </revisionDesc>
</teiHeader>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <elementRef key="fileDesc"/>
  <classRef key="model.teiHeaderPart"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <elementRef key="revisionDesc"
   minOccurs="0"/>
```

```
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element teiHeader
{
   att.global.attributes,
   ( fileDesc, model.teiHeaderPart*, revisionDesc? )
}
```

<text> contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample. [4. Default Text Structure 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.written (*@hand*)

Member of model.resourceLike

Contained by

core: teiCorpus

textstructure: TEI group

May contain

core: cb gap lb milestone note pb

figures: figure

linking: anchor

textstructure: back body front group

transcr: fw

Note This element should not be used to represent a text which is inserted at an arbitrary point within the structure of another, for example as in an embedded or quoted narrative; the <floatingText> is provided for this purpose.

Example

```
<text>
 <front>
  <docTitle>
   <titlePart>Autumn Haze</titlePart>
  </docTitle>
 </front>
 <body>
  <l>Is it a dragonfly or a maple leaf</l>
  <l>That settles softly down upon the water?</l>
 </body>
</text>
```

Example The body of a text may be replaced by a group of nested texts, as in the following schematic:

```
<text>
 <front>
```

```
<!-- front matter for the whole group -->
 </front>
 <group>
  <text>
<!-- first text -->
  </text>
  <text>
<!-- second text -->
  </text>
 </group>
</text>
```

Schematron <s:rule context=" tei:biblFull "> <s:report test="ancestor::tei:text">Error: The element <s:name/> is not permitted outside the header</s:report> </s:rule>

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.global"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="front"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="body"/>
   <elementRef key="group"/>
  </alternate>
  <classRef key="model.global"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="back"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element text
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   (
      model.global*,
      ( front, model.global* )?,
      ( body | group ),
      model.global*,
      ( back, model.global* )?
   )
}
```

<time> contains a phrase defining a time of day in any format. [3.5.4. Dates and Times]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.datable (*@calendar*, *@period*) (att.datable.w3c (*@when*, *@notBefore*, *@notAfter*, *@from*, *@to*)) att.editLike (att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*)) (att.source (*@source*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of model.dateLike

Contained by

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder handNote language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb ref reg rs sic time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Example

```
As he sat smiling, the
quarter struck — <time when="11:45:00">the quarter to twelve</time>.
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element time
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.datable.attributes,
   att.editLike.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global )*
}
```

<title> contains a title for any kind of work. [3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.canonical (*@ref*) att.typed (~~type~~, @subtype)

@type classifies the title according to some convenient typology.

Derived from att.typed

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Sample values include: **main** main title

sub (subordinate) subtitle, title of part

alt (alternate) alternate title, often in another language, by which the work is also known

short abbreviated form of title

desc (descriptive) descriptive paraphrase of the work functioning as a title

Note This attribute is provided for convenience in analysing titles and processing them according to their type; where such specialized processing is not necessary, there is no need for such analysis, and the entire title, including subtitles and any parallel titles, may be enclosed within a single <title> element.

@level indicates the bibliographic level for a title, that is, whether it identifies an article, book, journal, series, or unpublished material.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: **a** (analytic) the title applies to an analytic item, such as an article, poem, or other work published as part of a larger item.

m (monographic) the title applies to a monograph such as a book or other item considered to be a distinct publication, including single volumes of multi-volume works

j (journal) the title applies to any serial or periodical publication such as a journal, magazine, or newspaper

s (series) the title applies to a series of otherwise distinct publications such as a collection

u (unpublished) the title applies to any unpublished material

(including theses and dissertations unless published by a commercial press)

Note The level of a title is sometimes implied by its context: for example, a title appearing directly within an `<analytic>` element is *ipso facto* of level 'a', and one appearing within a `<series>` element of level 's'. For this reason, the *level* attribute is not required in contexts where its value can be unambiguously inferred. Where it is supplied in such contexts, its value should not contradict the value implied by its parent element.

Member of model.emphLike

Contained by

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder handNote language licence principal rendition seriesStmt sponsor tagUsage titleStmt

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Note The attributes *key* and *ref*, inherited from the class att.canonical may be used to indicate the canonical form for the title; the former, by supplying (for example) the identifier of a record in some external library system; the latter by pointing to an XML element somewhere containing the canonical form of the title.

Example

```
<title>Information Technology and the Research Process: Proceedings of
```

```
a conference held at Cranfield Institute of Technology, UK,
18–21 July 1989</title>
```

Example

```
<title>Hardy's Tess of the D'Urbervilles: a machine readable
edition</title>
```

Example

```
<title type="full">
 <title type="main">Synthèse</title>
 <title type="sub">an international journal for
   epistemology, methodology and history of
   science</title>
</title>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element title
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.canonical.attributes,
   att.typed.attribute.subtype,
   attribute type { text }?,
   attribute level { "a" | "m" | "j" | "s" | "u" }?,
   macro.paraContent}
```

<titlePage> (title page) contains the title page of a text, appearing within the front or back matter. [4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

`@type` classifies the title page according to any convenient typology.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Note This attribute allows the same element to be used for volume title pages, series title pages, etc., as well as for the‘main’ title page of a work.

Member of model.frontPart

Contained by

textstructure: back front

May contain

core: cb gap graphic lb milestone note pb

figures: figure

linking: anchor

textstructure: argument byline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph imprimatur titlePart

transcr: fw

Example

```
<titlePage>
 <docTitle>
  <titlePart type="main">THOMAS OF Reading.</titlePart>
  <titlePart type="alt">OR, The sixe worthy yeomen of the
West.</titlePart>
 </docTitle>
 <docEdition>Now the fourth time corrected and enlarged</docEdition>
 <byline>By T.D.</byline>
 <figure>
  <head>TP</head>
  <p>Thou shalt labor till thou returne to duste</p>
  <figDesc>Printers Ornament used by TP</figDesc>
 </figure>
 <docImprint>Printed at <name type="place">London</name> for
<name>T.P.</name>
  <date>1612.</date>
 </docImprint>
</titlePage>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.global"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <classRef key="model.titlepagePart"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.titlepagePart"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element titlePage
{
   att.global.attributes,
   attribute type { text }?,
   (
      model.global*,
      model.titlepagePart,
      ( model.titlepagePart | model.global )*
   )
}
```

<titlePart> contains a subsection or division of the title of a work, as indicated on a title page. [4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

`@type` specifies the role of this subdivision of the title.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Suggested values include: **main** main title of the work[Default]

sub (subordinate) subtitle of the work

alt (alternate) alternative title of the work

short abbreviated form of title

desc (descriptive) descriptive paraphrase of the work

Member of model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

textstructure: back docTitle front titlePage

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Example

```
<docTitle>
 <titlePart type="main">THE FORTUNES
   AND MISFORTUNES Of the FAMOUS
   Moll Flanders, &c.
 </titlePart>
 <titlePart type="desc">Who was BORN in NEWGATE,
   And during a Life of continu'd Variety for
   Threescore Years, besides her Childhood, was
   Twelve Year a <hi>Whore</hi>, five times a <hi>Wife</hi> (wherof
   once to her own Brother) Twelve Year a <hi>Thief,</hi>
   Eight Year a Transported <hi>Felon</hi> in <hi>Virginia</hi>,
   at last grew <hi>Rich</hi>, liv'd <hi>Honest</hi>, and died a
 <hi>Penitent</hi>.</titlePart>
</docTitle>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
```

```
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element titlePart
{
   att.global.attributes,
   attribute type { "main" | "sub" | "alt" | "short" | "desc" }?,
   macro.paraContent}
```

<trailer> contains a closing title or footer appearing at the end of a division of a text. [4.2.4. Content of Textual Divisions 4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of model.divBottomPart

Contained by

core: lg list

drama: castGroup

figures: figure table

textstructure: back body div front group postscript

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Example

```
<trailer>Explicit pars tertia</trailer>
```

Example

```
<trailer>
 <l>In stead of FINIS this advice <hi>I</hi> send,</l>
 <l>Let Rogues and Thieves beware of <lb/>
```

```
    <hi>Hamans</hi> END.</l>
  </trailer>
```

From EEBO A87070

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <elementRef key="lg"/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.inter"/>
  <classRef key="model.lLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element trailer
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   (
      text
    | lg    | model.gLike    | model.phrase    | model.inter    | model.lLike    | model.
}
```

<unclear>

<unclear> contains a word, phrase, or passage which cannot be transcribed with certainty because it is illegible or inaudible in the source. [11.3.3.1. Damage, Illegibility, and Supplied Text 3.4.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.editLike (att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*)) (att.source (*@source*))

@reason indicates why the material is hard to transcribe.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

```
<div>
 <head>Rx</head>
 <p>500 mg <unclear reason="illegible">placebo</unclear>
 </p>
</div>
```

Note One or more words may be used to describe the reason; usually each word will refer to a single cause. Typical examples might thus include *faded*, *illegible*, *eccentric_ductus background_noise*, *passing_truck*,etc.

@agent Where the difficulty in transcription arises from damage, categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Sample values include: **rubbing** damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges

mildew damage results from mildew on the leaf surface

smoke damage results from smoke

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: am fw supplied zone

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Note The same element is used for all cases of uncertainty in the transcription of element content, whether for written or spoken material. For other aspects of certainty, uncertainty, and reliability of tagging and transcription, see chapter 21. Certainty, Precision, and Responsibility.The `<damage>`, <gap>, <del>, <unclear> and <supplied> elements may be closely allied in use. See section 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.
The *hand* attribute points to a definition of the hand concerned, as further discussed in section 11.3.2.1. Document Hands.

Example

```
<u> ...and then <unclear reason="background-noise">Nathalie</unclear> said
... </u>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element unclear
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.editLike.attributes,
   attribute reason { list { + } }?,
   attribute agent { text }?,
   macro.paraContent}
```

<w> (word) represents a grammatical (not necessarily orthographic) word. [17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories]

Module analysis

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.segLike (*@function*) (att.fragmentable (*@part*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

@lemma provides a lemma for the word, such as an uninflected dictionary entry form.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.text

@lemmaRef provides a pointer to a definition of the lemma for the word, for example in an online lexicon.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.pointer

Member of model.segLike

Contained by

analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied zone

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: abbr add cb choice corr del expan gap hi lb milestone note orig pb reg sic unclear

figures: figure

gaiji: g

linking: anchor seg

transcr: am ex fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Example

```
<w type="verb" lemma="hit"
 lem-
maRef="http://www.example.com/lexicon/hitvb.xml">hitt<m type="suffix">ing</m>
</w>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <elementRef key="seg"/>
  <elementRef key="w"/>
  <elementRef key="m"/>
  <elementRef key="c"/>
  <elementRef key="pc"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
  <classRef key="model.lPart"/>
  <classRef key="model.hiLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.pPart.edit"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element w
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.segLike.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   attribute lemma { text }?,
   attribute lemmaRef { text }?,
   (
      text
    | model.gLike    | seg    | w    | m    | c    | pc    | model.global    | model.lPar
}
```

17.3 Schema teisimple: unchanged components

abstract: contains a summary or formal abstract prefixed to an existing source document by the encoder. [2.4.4. Abstracts]

att.ascribed: provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be ascribed to a specific individual. [3.3.3. Quotation 8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts]

att.breaking: provides an attribute to indicate whether or not the element concerned is considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace. [3.10.3. Milestone Elements]
att.cReferencing: provides an attribute which may be used to supply a *canonical reference* as a means of identifying the target of a pointer.
att.citing: provides attributes for specifying the specific part of a bibliographic item being cited. [1.3.1. Attribute Classes]
att.coordinated: provides attributes which can be used to position their parent element within a two dimensional coordinate system.
att.datable: provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or datable events. [3.5.4. Dates and Times 13.3.6. Dates and Times]
att.datable.w3c: provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events conforming to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*. [3.5.4. Dates and Times 13.3.6. Dates and Times]
att.docStatus: provides attributes for use on metadata elements describing the status of a document.
att.edition: provides attributes identifying the source edition from which some encoded feature derives.
att.fragmentable: provides an attribute for representing fragmentation of a structural element, typically as a consequence of some overlapping hierarchy.
att.global: provides attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. [1.3.1.1. Global Attributes]
att.global.analytic: provides additional global attributes for associating specific analyses or interpretations with appropriate portions of a text. [17.2. Global Attributes for Simple Analyses 17.3. Spans and Interpretations]
att.global.facs: provides an attribute used to express correspondence between an element containing transcribed text and all or part of an image representing that text. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles]
att.global.responsibility: provides attributes indicating the agent responsible for some aspect of the text, the markup or something asserted by the markup, and the degree of certainty associated with it. [3.4. Simple Editorial Changes 11.3.2.2. Hand, Responsibility, and Certainty Attributes 17.3. Spans and Interpretations 13.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents]
att.handFeatures: provides attributes describing aspects of the hand in which a manuscript is written. [11.3.2.1. Document Hands]
att.internetMedia: provides attributes for specifying the type of a computer resource using a standard taxonomy.
att.measurement: provides attributes to represent a regularized or normalized measurement.
att.media: provides attributes for specifying display and related properties of external media.
att.milestoneUnit: provides an attribute to indicate the type of section which is changing at a specific milestone. [3.10.3. Milestone Elements 2.3.6.3. Milestone Method 2.3.6. The Reference System Declaration]
att.naming: provides attributes common to elements which refer to named persons, places, organizations etc. [3.5.1. Referring Strings 13.3.5. Names and Nyms]
att.notated: provides an attribute to indicate any specialised notation used for element content.

att.patternReplacement: provides attributes for regular-expression matching and replacement. [16.2.3. Using Abbreviated Pointers 2.3.6.3. Milestone Method 2.3.6. The Reference System Declaration 2.3.6.2. Search-and-Replace Method]
att.personal: (attributes for components of names usually, but not necessarily, personal names) common attributes for those elements which form part of a name usually, but not necessarily, a personal name. [13.2.1. Personal Names]
att.resourced: provides attributes by which a resource (such as an externally held media file) may be located.
att.segLike: provides attributes for elements used for arbitrary segmentation. [16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors 17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories]
att.sortable: provides attributes for elements in lists or groups that are sortable, but whose sorting key cannot be derived mechanically from the element content. [9.1. Dictionary Body and Overall Structure]
att.source: provides attributes for pointing to the source of a bibliographic reference. [3.3.3. Quotation 8.3.4. Writing]
att.spanning: provides attributes for elements which delimit a span of text by pointing mechanisms rather than by enclosing it. [1.3.1. Attribute Classes]
att.styleDef: provides attributes to specify the name of a formal definition language used to provide formatting or rendition information.
att.tableDecoration: provides attributes used to decorate rows or cells of a table. [14. Tables, Formulæ, Graphics and Notated Music]
att.timed: provides attributes common to those elements which have a duration in time, expressed either absolutely or by reference to an alignment map. [8.3.5. Temporal Information]
att.transcriptional: provides attributes specific to elements encoding authorial or scribal intervention in a text when transcribing manuscript or similar sources. [11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions]
att.typed: provides attributes which can be used to classify or subclassify elements in any way. [1.3.1. Attribute Classes 17.1.1. Words and Above 3.5.1. Referring Strings 3.6. Simple Links and Cross-References 3.5.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions 3.12.1. Core Tags for Verse 7.2.5. Speech Contents 4.1.1. Unnumbered Divisions 4.1.2. Numbered Divisions 4.2.1. Headings and Trailers 4.4. Virtual Divisions 13.3.2.3. Personal Relationships 11.3.1.1. Core Elements for Transcriptional Work 16.1.1. Pointers and Links 16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors 12.2. Linking the Apparatus to the Text 22.5.2. RELAX NG Content Models 8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts 23.3.1.4. Modification of Attribute and Attribute Value Lists]
att.written: provides an attribute to indicate the hand in which the textual content of an element was written in the source being transcribed. [1.3.1. Attribute Classes]
authority: (release authority) supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for making a work available, other than a publisher or distributor. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]
availability: supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, any licence applying to it, etc. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]
biblFull: (fully-structured bibliographic citation) contains a fully-structured bibliographic citation, in which all components of the TEI file description are present. [3.11.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References 2.2. The File Description 2.2.7. The Source Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

catDesc: (category description) describes some category within a taxonomy or text typology, either in the form of a brief prose description or in terms of the situational parameters used by the TEI formal textDesc. [2.3.7. The Classification Declaration]
catRef: (category reference) specifies one or more defined categories within some taxonomy or text typology. [2.4.3. The Text Classification]
category: contains an individual descriptive category, possibly nested within a superordinate category, within a user-defined taxonomy. [2.3.7. The Classification Declaration]
change: documents a change or set of changes made during the production of a source document, or during the revision of an electronic file. [2.6. The Revision Description 2.4.1. Creation 11.7. Identifying Changes and Revisions]
char: (character) provides descriptive information about a character. [5.2. Markup Constructs for Representation of Characters and Glyphs]
charDecl: (character declarations) provides information about nonstandard characters and glyphs. [5.2. Markup Constructs for Representation of Characters and Glyphs]
charName: (character name) contains the name of a character, expressed following Unicode conventions. [5.2. Markup Constructs for Representation of Characters and Glyphs]
charProp: (character property) provides a name and value for some property of the parent character or glyph. [5.2. Markup Constructs for Representation of Characters and Glyphs]
classCode: (classification code) contains the classification code used for this text in some standard classification system. [2.4.3. The Text Classification]
classDecl: (classification declarations) contains one or more taxonomies defining any classificatory codes used elsewhere in the text. [2.3.7. The Classification Declaration 2.3. The Encoding Description]
creation: contains information about the creation of a text. [2.4.1. Creation 2.4. The Profile Description]
data.word: defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single word or token.
distributor: supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for the distribution of a text. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]
edition: describes the particularities of one edition of a text. [2.2.2. The Edition Statement]
editionStmt: (edition statement) groups information relating to one edition of a text. [2.2.2. The Edition Statement 2.2. The File Description]
editorialDecl: (editorial practice declaration) provides details of editorial principles and practices applied during the encoding of a text. [2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration 2.3. The Encoding Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]
extent: describes the approximate size of a text stored on some carrier medium or of some other object, digital or non-digital, specified in any convenient units. [2.2.3. Type and Extent of File 2.2. The File Description 3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 10.7.1. Object Description]
facsimile: contains a representation of some written source in the form of a set of images rather than as transcribed or encoded text. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles]
funder: (funding body) specifies the name of an individual, institution, or organization responsible for the funding of a project or text. [2.2.1. The Title Statement]

glyph: (character glyph) provides descriptive information about a character glyph. [5.2. Markup Constructs for Representation of Characters and Glyphs]
glyphName: (character glyph name) contains the name of a glyph, expressed following Unicode conventions for character names. [5.2. Markup Constructs for Representation of Characters and Glyphs]
handNote: (note on hand) describes a particular style or hand distinguished within a manuscript. [10.7.2. Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations]
idno: (identifier) supplies any form of identifier used to identify some object, such as a bibliographic item, a person, a title, an organization, etc. in a standardized way. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.2.5. The Series Statement 3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]
keywords: contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text. [2.4.3. The Text Classification]
langUsage: (language usage) describes the languages, sublanguages, registers, dialects, etc. represented within a text. [2.4.2. Language Usage 2.4. The Profile Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]
language: characterizes a single language or sublanguage used within a text. [2.4.2. Language Usage]
licence: contains information about a licence or other legal agreement applicable to the text. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]
listChange: groups a number of change descriptions associated with either the creation of a source text or the revision of an encoded text. [2.6. The Revision Description 11.7. Identifying Changes and Revisions]
listPerson: (list of persons) contains a list of descriptions, each of which provides information about an identifiable person or a group of people, for example the participants in a language interaction, or the people referred to in a historical source. [13.3.2. The Person Element 15.2. Contextual Information 2.4. The Profile Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]
listPlace: (list of places) contains a list of places, optionally followed by a list of relationships (other than containment) defined amongst them. [2.2.7. The Source Description 13.3.4. Places]
listPrefixDef: (list of prefix definitions) contains a list of definitions of prefixing schemes used in data.pointer values, showing how abbreviated URIs using each scheme may be expanded into full URIs. [16.2.3. Using Abbreviated Pointers]
localName: (locally-defined property name) contains a locally defined name for some property. [5.2.1. Character Properties]
macro.anyXML: defines a content model within which any XML elements are permitted
macro.limitedContent: (paragraph content) defines the content of prose elements that are not used for transcription of extant materials. [1.3. The TEI Class System]
macro.paraContent: (paragraph content) defines the content of paragraphs and similar elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]
macro.phraseSeq: (phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and phrase-level elements. [1.4.1. Standard Content Models]
macro.phraseSeq.limited: (limited phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and those phrase-level elements that are not typically used for transcribing extant documents. [1.4.1. Standard Content Models]

macro.specialPara: ('special' paragraph content) defines the content model of elements such as notes or list items, which either contain a series of component-level elements or else have the same structure as a paragraph, containing a series of phrase-level and inter-level elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]
macro.xtext: (extended text) defines a sequence of character data and gaiji elements.
mapping: (character mapping) contains one or more characters which are related to the parent character or glyph in some respect, as specified by the *type* attribute. [5.2. Markup Constructs for Representation of Characters and Glyphs]
model.addrPart: groups elements such as names or postal codes which may appear as part of a postal address. [3.5.2. Addresses]
model.addressLike: groups elements used to represent a postal or email address. [1. The TEI Infrastructure]
model.availabilityPart: groups elements such as licences and paragraphs of text which may appear as part of an availability statement [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]
model.biblLike: groups elements containing a bibliographic description. [3.11. Bibliographic Citations and References]
model.biblPart: groups elements which represent components of a bibliographic description. [3.11. Bibliographic Citations and References]
model.castItemPart: groups component elements of an entry in a cast list, such as dramatic role or actor's name.
model.catDescPart: groups component elements of the TEI header Category Description.
model.choicePart: groups elements (other than <choice> itself) which can be used within a <choice> alternation. [3.4. Simple Editorial Changes]
model.common: groups common chunk- and inter-level elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]
model.dateLike: groups elements containing temporal expressions. [3.5.4. Dates and Times 13.3.6. Dates and Times]
model.descLike: groups elements which contain a description of their function.
model.div1Like: groups top-level structural divisions.
model.divBottom: groups elements appearing at the end of a text division. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]
model.divBottomPart: groups elements which can occur only at the end of a text division. [4.6. Title Pages]
model.divGenLike: groups elements used to represent a structural division which is generated rather than explicitly present in the source.
model.divLike: groups elements used to represent un-numbered generic structural divisions.
model.divPart: groups paragraph-level elements appearing directly within divisions. [1.3. The TEI Class System]
model.divTop: groups elements appearing at the beginning of a text division. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]
model.divTopPart: groups elements which can occur only at the beginning of a text division. [4.6. Title Pages]
model.divWrapper: groups elements which can appear at either top or bottom of a textual division. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]
model.editorialDeclPart: groups elements which may be used inside <editorialDecl> and appear multiple times.

model.emphLike: groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct and to which a specific function can be attributed. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]
model.encodingDescPart: groups elements which may be used inside <encodingDesc> and appear multiple times.
model.eventLike: groups elements which describe events.
model.frontPart: groups elements which appear at the level of divisions within front or back matter. [7.1. Front and Back Matter]
model.frontPart.drama: groups elements which appear at the level of divisions within front or back matter of performance texts only. [7.1. Front and Back Matter]
model.gLike: groups elements used to represent individual non-Unicode characters or glyphs.
model.global: groups elements which may appear at any point within a TEI text. [1.3. The TEI Class System]
model.global.edit: groups globally available elements which perform a specifically editorial function. [1.3. The TEI Class System]
model.global.meta: groups globally available elements which describe the status of other elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]
model.graphicLike: groups elements containing images, formulae, and similar objects. [3.9. Graphics and Other Non-textual Components]
model.headLike: groups elements used to provide a title or heading at the start of a text division.
model.hiLike: groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct but to which no specific function can be attributed. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]
model.highlighted: groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]
model.imprintPart: groups the bibliographic elements which occur inside imprints. [3.11. Bibliographic Citations and References]
model.inter: groups elements which can appear either within or between paragraph-like elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]
model.lLike: groups elements representing metrical components such as verse lines.
model.lPart: groups phrase-level elements which may appear within verse only. [6.2. Components of the Verse Line]
model.labelLike: groups elements used to gloss or explain other parts of a document.
model.limitedPhrase: groups phrase-level elements excluding those elements primarily intended for transcription of existing sources. [1.3. The TEI Class System]
model.linePart: groups transcriptional elements which appear within lines or zones of a source-oriented transcription within a `<sourceDoc>` element.
model.listLike: groups list-like elements. [3.7. Lists]
model.measureLike: groups elements which denote a number, a quantity, a measurement, or similar piece of text that conveys some numerical meaning. [3.5.3. Numbers and Measures]
model.milestoneLike: groups milestone-style elements used to represent reference systems. [1.3. The TEI Class System 3.10.3. Milestone Elements]
model.nameLike: groups elements which name or refer to a person, place, or organization.

model.nameLike.agent: groups elements which contain names of individuals or corporate bodies. [3.5. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses]
model.noteLike: groups globally-available note-like elements. [3.8. Notes, Annotation, and Indexing]
model.pLike: groups paragraph-like elements.
model.pLike.front: groups paragraph-like elements which can occur as direct constituents of front matter. [4.6. Title Pages]
model.pPart.data: groups phrase-level elements containing names, dates, numbers, measures, and similar data. [3.5. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses]
model.pPart.edit: groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial correction and transcription. [3.4. Simple Editorial Changes]
model.pPart.editorial: groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial interventions that may be useful both in transcribing and in authoring. [3.4. Simple Editorial Changes]
model.pPart.transcriptional: groups phrase-level elements used for editorial transcription of pre-existing source materials. [3.4. Simple Editorial Changes]
model.persStateLike: groups elements describing changeable characteristics of a person which have a definite duration, for example occupation, residence, or name.
model.personLike: groups elements which provide information about people and their relationships.
model.personPart: groups elements which form part of the description of a person. [15.2.2. The Participant Description]
model.phrase: groups elements which can occur at the level of individual words or phrases. [1.3. The TEI Class System]
model.phrase.xml: groups phrase-level elements used to encode XML constructs such as element names, attribute names, and attribute values [22. Documentation Elements]
model.placeLike: groups elements used to provide information about places and their relationships.
model.profileDescPart: groups elements which may be used inside <profileDesc> and appear multiple times.
model.ptrLike: groups elements used for purposes of location and reference. [3.6. Simple Links and Cross-References]
model.publicationStmtPart.agency: groups the child elements of a <publicationStmt> element of the TEI header that indicate an authorising agent. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]
model.publicationStmtPart.detail: groups the agency-specific child elements of the <publicationStmt> element of the TEI header. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]
model.qLike: groups elements related to highlighting which can appear either within or between chunk-level elements. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]
model.quoteLike: groups elements used to directly contain quotations.
model.resourceLike: groups separate elements which constitute the content of a digital resource, as opposed to its metadata. [1.3. The TEI Class System]
model.respLike: groups elements which are used to indicate intellectual or other significant responsibility, for example within a bibliographic element.
model.segLike: groups elements used for arbitrary segmentation. [16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors 17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories]
model.sourceDescPart: groups elements which may be used inside <sourceDesc> and appear multiple times.

model.stageLike: groups elements containing stage directions or similar things defined by the module for performance texts. [7.3. Other Types of Performance Text]
model.teiHeaderPart: groups high level elements which may appear more than once in a TEI header.
model.titlepagePart: groups elements which can occur as direct constituents of a title page, such as <docTitle>, <docAuthor>, <docImprint>, or <epigraph>. [4.6. Title Pages]
namespace: supplies the formal name of the namespace to which the elements documented by its children belong. [2.3.4. The Tagging Declaration]
notesStmt: (notes statement) collects together any notes providing information about a text additional to that recorded in other parts of the bibliographic description. [2.2.6. The Notes Statement 2.2. The File Description]
person: provides information about an identifiable individual, for example a participant in a language interaction, or a person referred to in a historical source. [13.3.2. The Person Element 15.2.2. The Participant Description]
place: contains data about a geographic location [13.3.4. Places]
prefixDef: (prefixing scheme used in data.pointer values) defines a prefixing scheme used in data.pointer values, showing how abbreviated URIs using the scheme may be expanded into full URIs. [16.2.3. Using Abbreviated Pointers]
principal: (principal researcher) supplies the name of the principal researcher responsible for the creation of an electronic text. [2.2.1. The Title Statement]
projectDesc: (project description) describes in detail the aim or purpose for which an electronic file was encoded, together with any other relevant information concerning the process by which it was assembled or collected. [2.3.1. The Project Description 2.3. The Encoding Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]
publicationStmt: (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.2. The File Description]
refsDecl: (references declaration) specifies how canonical references are constructed for this text. [2.3.6.3. Milestone Method 2.3. The Encoding Description 2.3.6. The Reference System Declaration]
rendition: supplies information about the rendition or appearance of one or more elements in the source text. [2.3.4. The Tagging Declaration]
resp: (responsibility) contains a phrase describing the nature of a person's intellectual responsibility, or an organization's role in the production or distribution of a work. [3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.2. The Edition Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement]
respStmt: (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of a bibliographic work. [3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.2. The Edition Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement]
samplingDecl: (sampling declaration) contains a prose description of the rationale and methods used in sampling texts in the creation of a corpus or collection. [2.3.2. The Sampling Declaration 2.3. The Encoding Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]
seriesStmt: (series statement) groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs. [2.2.5. The Series Statement 2.2. The File Description]

set: (setting) contains a description of the setting, time, locale, appearance, etc., of the action of a play, typically found in the front matter of a printed performance text (not a stage direction). [7.1. Front and Back Matter]
settingDesc: (setting description) describes the setting or settings within which a language interaction takes place, or other places otherwise referred to in a text, edition, or metadata. [15.2. Contextual Information 2.4. The Profile Description]
sourceDesc: (source description) describes the source from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as "born digital" for a text which has no previous existence. [2.2.7. The Source Description]
sponsor: specifies the name of a sponsoring organization or institution. [2.2.1. The Title Statement]
surface: defines a written surface as a two-dimensional coordinate space, optionally grouping one or more graphic representations of that space, zones of interest within that space, and transcriptions of the writing within them. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles 11.2.2. Embedded Transcription]
tagUsage: documents the usage of a specific element within a specified document. [2.3.4. The Tagging Declaration]
tagsDecl: (tagging declaration) provides detailed information about the tagging applied to a document. [2.3.4. The Tagging Declaration 2.3. The Encoding Description]
taxonomy: defines a typology either implicitly, by means of a bibliographic citation, or explicitly by a structured taxonomy. [2.3.7. The Classification Declaration]
teiCorpus: contains the whole of a TEI encoded corpus, comprising a single corpus header and one or more TEI elements, each containing a single text header and a text. [4. Default Text Structure 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]
teidata.certainty: defines the range of attribute values expressing a degree of certainty.
teidata.count: defines the range of attribute values used for a non-negative integer value used as a count.
teidata.duration.iso: defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using ISO 8601 standard formats
teidata.duration.w3c: defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using W3C datatypes.
teidata.enumerated: defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single XML name taken from a list of documented possibilities.
teidata.language: defines the range of attribute values used to identify a particular combination of human language and writing system. [6.1. Language Identification]
teidata.name: defines the range of attribute values expressed as an XML Name.
teidata.namespace: defines the range of attribute values used to indicate XML namespaces as defined by the W3C Namespaces in XML Technical Recommendation.
teidata.numeric: defines the range of attribute values used for numeric values.
teidata.outputMeasurement: defines a range of values for use in specifying the size of an object that is intended for display.
teidata.pattern: defines attribute values which are expressed as a regular expression.
teidata.point: defines the data type used to express a point in cartesian space.

teidata.pointer: defines the range of attribute values used to provide a single URI, absolute or relative, pointing to some other resource, either within the current document or elsewhere.
teidata.probCert: defines a range of attribute values which can be expressed either as a numeric probability or as a coded certainty value.
teidata.probability: defines the range of attribute values expressing a probability.
teidata.replacement: defines attribute values which contain a replacement template.
teidata.sex: defines the range of attribute values used to identify human or animal sex.
teidata.temporal.w3c: defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition* specification.
teidata.text: defines the range of attribute values used to express some kind of identifying string as a single sequence of unicode characters possibly including whitespace.
teidata.truthValue: defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value.
teidata.version: defines the range of attribute values which may be used to specify a TEI or Unicode version number.
teidata.versionNumber: defines the range of attribute values used for version numbers.
teidata.word: defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single word or token.
textClass: (text classification) groups information which describes the nature or topic of a text in terms of a standard classification scheme, thesaurus, etc. [2.4.3. The Text Classification]
titleStmt: (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its content. [2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2. The File Description]
unicodeName: (unicode property name) contains the name of a registered Unicode normative or informative property. [5.2.1. Character Properties]
value: contains a single value for some property, attribute, or other analysis. [5.2.1. Character Properties]
xenoData: (outside metadata) provides a container element into which metadata in non-TEI formats may be placed. [2.5. Non-TEI Metadata]
zone: defines any two-dimensional area within a <surface> element. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles 11.2.2. Embedded Transcription]

17.4 Summary

The TEI Simple schema defines a total of 166 elements, of which 56 appear in the TEI Header alone. Processing Models are defined for most of the elements.

The schema uses the whole of the TEI base module, the whole of the TEI gaiji module, and the whole of the header module, with the exception of about 24 elements considered to be of specialised interest only.

Module tei

Module header
Module gaiji
Module corpus
Element <particDesc> change

Element <text>	change

17.5 Add support for facsimile

17.6 Attribute classes

Class att.datcat	delete
Class att.declarable	delete
Class att.declaring	delete
Class att.ranging	delete
Class att.divLike	delete
Class att.global.linking	change
Class att.canonical	change
Class att.editLike	change
Class att.pointing	change
Class att.placement	change
Class att.dimensions	change
Class att.global.rendition	change

17.7 Model classes

Class model.entryPart	delete
Class model.placeNamePart	delete
Class model.placeStateLike	delete
Class model.egLike	delete
Class model.offsetLike	delete
Class model.pPart.msdesc	delete
Class model.oddDecl	delete
Class model.specDescLike	delete
Class model.entryPart	delete
Class model.placeNamePart	delete
Class model.placeStateLike	delete
Class model.certLike	delete
Class model.glossLike	delete

17.8 Elements

The main part of Simple is the set of selected elements.

Element <desc>	change

Element <ab>	change
Element <abbr>	change
Element <actor>	change
Element <add>	change
Element <address>	change
Element <addrLine>	change
Element <am>	change
Element <anchor>	change
Element <argument>	change
Element <author>	change
Element <back>	change

Element <bibl>	change
Element <biblScope>	change
Element <body>	change
Element <byline>	change
Element <c>	change
Element <castGroup>	change
Element <castItem>	change
Element <castList>	change
Element <cb>	change
Element <cell>	change
Element <choice>	change
Element <cit>	change
Element <closer>	change
Element <code>	change
Element <corr>	change
Element <date>	change
Element <dateline>	change
Element <del>	change
Element <desc>	change
Element	change
Element <docAuthor>	change
Element <docDate>	change
Element <docEdition>	change
Element <docImprint>	change
Element <docTitle>	change
Element <editor>	change
Element <email>	change
Element <epigraph>	change
Element <ex>	change
Element <expan>	change
Element <figDesc>	change
Element <figure>	change
Element <floatingText>	change
Element <foreign>	change
Element <formula>	change
Element <front>	change
Element <fw>	change
Element <g>	change
Element <gap>	change
Element <graphic>	change
Element <group>	change
Element `<handShift>`	change
Element <head>	change
Element <hi>	change
Element <imprimatur>	change
Element <item>	change
Element <l>	change
Element <label>	change
Element <lb>	change
Element <lg>	change
Element <list>	change

Element <listBibl> change
Element <measure> change
Element <milestone> change
Element <name> change
Element <note> change
Element <num> change
Element <opener> change
Element <orig> change
Element <p> change
Element <pb> change
Element <pc> change
Element <postscript> change
Element <publisher> change
Element <pubPlace> change
Element <q> change
Element <quote> change
Element <ref> change
Element <reg> change
Element <relatedItem> change
Element <rhyme> change
Element <role> change
Element <roleDesc> change
Element <row> change
Element <rs> change
Element <s> change
Element <salute> change
Element <seg> change
Element <sic> change
Element <signed> change
Element <sp> change
Element <speaker> change
Element <spGrp> change
Element <stage> change
Element <subst> change
Element <supplied> change
Element <table> change
Element <fileDesc> change
Element <profileDesc> change
Element <revisionDesc> change
Element <encodingDesc> change
Element <teiHeader> change
Element <TEI> change
Element <text> change
Element <time> change
Element <title> change
Element <titlePage> change
Element <titlePart> change
Element <trailer> change
Element <unclear> change
Element <w> change

Element <formula>	change
Element <name>	change
Element <cell>	change
Element <row>	change